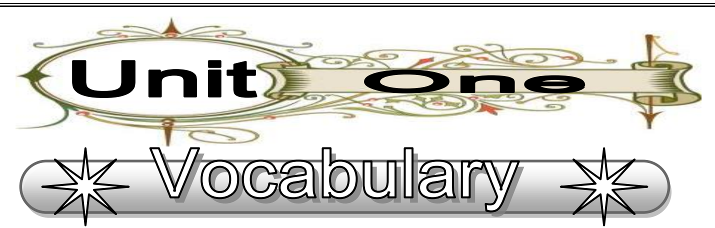




stay	يبقى - اقامه	instructions	تعليمات	emergency services	خدمه طوارئ
health	صحه	calm	هادئ	CPR	الانعاش القلبي الرئوي
healthy	صحي	careful	حريص	AHC	عمل شاق
perform	يؤدي	develop	ينمي - يطور	sudden death	موت مفاجئ
first aid	الاسعافات الاوليه	heart	القلب	cough	كحه - يكح
persuasive.	مقنع	report	يبلغ - تقرير	Stay up	يسهر
persuade	يقنع	collaboration	تعاون	phrase	عباره
support	يؤيد - يدعم	damage	تلف	course	دوره
athletic	رياضي	educate	يعلم	join	ينضم – يلتحق ب
athletes	رياضيون	regular	منتظم	right	صح - يمين
immune system	جهاز المناعه	experts	خبراء	situation	موقف
explanation	تفسير	disagree	لا يوافق	perfect	متقن
suggest + v.+ ing	يقترح	director	مخرج - مدير	worry	قلق - يقلق
solutions	حلول	dreams	احلام	brilliant	ذكي - لامع
medical	طبي	trophy	انتصار- كأس	champion	بطل
silence	سكوت	responsibility	مسؤليه	reasons	اسباب
death	الموت	care about	يهتم ب	a play	مسرحيه
infection	عدوى	gloves	قفازات	king	ملك
react	يتصرف	bandage	ضماده	characters	شخصيات
action	رد فعل	wrap	يلف	daughter	ابنه
technique	طريقه	come off	يتفكك	husband	زوج
severe	قاسي	special	خاص	sevant	خادم
describe	يصف	examination	فحص - امتحان	soliders	جنود
illness	مرض	obligation	الزام - اجبار	messengers	رسل
injury	اصابه	necessary	لازم - ضروري	palace	قصر
injured	مصاب	prohibition	منع - تحريم	Proud of	فخور ب
skill	مهاره	express	يعبر عن	kingdom	مملكه
hurt	يؤذي	safety	امان الطريق/	divide	يقسم
emergency	طوارئ	encourage	يشجع	beauty	جمال
serious	خطير	kits	المجموع - العدد	riches	ثروه
check	يفحص	available	متاح	forest	غابه
area	منطقه	partener	شريك	countryside	الريف
awake	مستيقظ	advice	نصيحه	speech	كلام - خطبه
bleed	ينزف	organs	اعضاء	duty	واجب
signs	اشارات	lungs	الرئتين	cruel	قاسى
reply	يستجيب	brain	مخ	honest	امين
shoulder	كتف	muscles	عضلات	stranger	غريب
normal	طبيعي	fight	يقاتل	majesty	جلاله الملك
breathing	تنفس	boost	يعزز – يدعم - يساعد	power	قوه – سلطه - طاقه
immediately	في الحال	cell	خليه - زنزانه	title	لقب
lying	راقد - كاذب	virus	فيرس	foolish	احمق
flat	شقه - مسطح	disease	مرض	shout about	يصرخ في
surface	سطح	improve	يحسن	sword	سيف
chest	صدر	separate	يفصل	performance	اداء
lock	قفل - يغلق	part	جزئ	operation	عمليه
finger	اصبع اليد	COVID 19 virus	كورونا	blood	دم
step	خطوه - يخطو	appear	يظهر - يبدو	pump	يضخ - مضخه
press	يضغط - الصحافه	leaf - leaves	ورقه شجر - ورق	label	بطاقه تعليمات

rise	يرتفع - تشرق	a cold	برد	advertisement	اعلان
diet	ريجيم	mouths	افواة	flu	انفلونزا
pleasure	سعادة	behave	يتصرف	tight	محكم

Definitions

CPR	(cardiopulmonary resuscitation	الانعاش القلبي الرئوي
infection	A disease caused by a virus or bacteria.	عدوي
perform	To do an action	يؤدي
severe	To describe an illness or injury that is very serious.	قاسي - عنيف
technique	A way of doing something with a skill.	طريقه
boost	To help someone or something to improve or get better.	يعزز - يدعم
cell	The smallest separate part of a plant or animal.	خليه
immune system	A way that your body protects you from disease..	جهاز المناعة
organ	A part of your body that performs a job ,e.g. the brain or the heart.	عضو
virus	A very small living thing that causes disease..	فيرس
AHC	Athletic Heart Center	مركز القلب الرياضي
a play	a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre	مسرحيه
a character	a person that an actor plays	شخصيه
an act	a larger part of a play	فصل
a scene	a small part of a play which happens in one place	مشهد

Expressions & Prepositions.

take up a new sport	يمارس رياضة جديدة	miss the chance	تفوته الفرصه
How many litres of blood	كم عدد اللترات	make sure	يتأكد
How much blood	كم كميه الدم	do things	يؤدي اشياء
interested in	مهتم ب	worried about	قلق بخصوص
healthy hearts	قلوب صحيه	solutions to problems	حلول للمشاكل
health problems	مشاكل صحه	do an action	يقوم برده فعل
it's a pleasure to see them.	من السعاده ان اراهم	a way of doing something	طريقه ليؤدي شئُ
get dirty	يتسخ	before helping	قبل المساعده
look forward to hearing from you	يتطلع الي	do CPR	يقوم بانعاش القلب
make a mistake	يعمل خطأ	seem to be very ill	يبدو انه مريض
do wrong to someone	يعمل خطأ	on a flat surface	علي سطح مستو
proud of	فخور ب	at the top of the list	علي قمه القائمة
medical support	دعم رياضي	on top of the first hand	مقدمه اليد الاولي
ill or injured person	مريض - مصاب	without touching	بدون لمس
have severe injuries	لديه اصابات بالغة	stop performing CPR	يتوقف عن انعاش القلب
reply to	يستجيب ل	do – perform first aid	يقوم باسعافات اوليه
lie on their back	استلقي علي ظهره	cure for	علاج لـ
do/cause damage	يسبب تلف	cure of	يعالج من
press down on the chest	يضغط علي الصدر	Put…….out	ينزع - يخلع
do sport	يمارس رياضه	expert on - in - at	خبير في
great at	متفوق في	come off	تنتزع – يتم فكها
in pairs	ثنائُيات	eat less fast food.	يأكل طعام سريع اقل
a two-day course	دوره لمه يومين	make notes on	يقوم بملاحظات
impact on	تاثير علي	take a first aid course	يأخذ دوره اسعافات اوليه
Give …….an infection	يعدي	a Olympic champion	بطل رياضي
do exercise	يمارس رياضه	think about - of	يفكر في
call for help	يطلب مساعده	shout about	يصرخ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	اقناع	persuasive	مقنع
		athlete - athletics	رياضي – العاب القوي	athletic	رياضي
infect	يعدي	infection	عدوي	Infected - infectious	مصاب - معدي
damage	يتلف	damage	تلف	damaging	ضار - مدمر
protect	يحمي	protection	حمايه	protective	واقي
perform	يؤدي	performance-performer	اداء - مؤدي	performable	يتم تأديته
injure	يصيب	injury	اصابه	injured	مصاب
describe	يصف	description - describer	وصف - واصف	describable	قابل للوصف
heal	يلتئم	health	صحه	healthy	صحي
		skill	مهاره	Skilful - skilled	ماهر
bleed	ينزف	blood - bleeder	دم - نازف	bleeding	قابل للنزف
lie	يرقد - يكذب	liar - lying	كذاب - كذب	liable	مسئول - خاضع
press	يضغط	press - pressure	الصحافه- ضغط	pressed -pressurized	مضغوط
endanger	يتعرض للخطر	danger	خطر	dangerous - endangered	خطير
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
react	يتصرف	Reaction- reactor	رد فعل- مفاعل نووي	reactive	متفاعل
strengthen	يقوي	strength	قوه	strong	قوي
		severity	قسوه	severe	قاسي
rise	تشرق - ينهض	rise	ارتفاع	rising	مشرق

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمه	Synonyms	Antonyms	العكس
disease	مرض	illness-sickness	Health- well being	صحه
infection	عدوي	contagion	Sterility - sanitation	الصحه العامه
infected	مصاب - فاسد	deadly-toxic- poisonous	Healthy-helpful	صحي
normal	عادي – طبيعي	usual - ordinary	unusual - abnormal	غير عادي
injured	مصاب	harmed – hurt	sound	سليم
injury	اصابه	Wound - harm	cure- remedy	علاج
collaboration	تعاون	Cooperation-participation	isolation	عزله
dangerous	خطير	risky – terrible –	safe –pure-healthy	امن –صحي
Rise	يرفع - تشرق	increase	Fall-drop-decrease	يقل
flat	مسطح	smooth-low	Rough- irregular-dull	خشن
awake	منتبه – مستيقظ	arouse - alert	asleep - unconscious	مغمي عليه
Appear	يظهر- يبدو	Seem-perform-enter	Disappear _ hide	يختفي
Limited	محدود	Narrow-restricted-reduced-	Unlimited-limitless-ss	غير محدود
monitor	يراقب	watch – observe - check		
happiness	سعاده	joy – delight - pleasure	despair – sorrow - misery	يأس - حزن
wild	بري - متوحش	Rough – violent- savage	tame - domestic	اليف

Language Notes

1- He/She also **spends** a lot of time **playing** video games

2– helpمفعول to + inf /.   - help...مفعول ..... +to مصدر بدون   - help مفعول with + شيء
She **helped** women **(to) succeed**.   - I **helped** Nada **do** the homework.
He **helped** me **with** homework.
- I can't help + v. + ing   - I **can't help watching** today's match.

3- other (صفة تتبع باسم) آخرون - آخر   - Some students like music. **Other students** like sport.

- **other** (صفة تتبع باسم) - الآخر - **I saw two boys. One of them was tall. The other was short.**
- **others** (ضمير تتبع بفعل) الآخرون - **Some students like music. Others like sport.**
- **another** آخــــــــــر : إضافي / مختلف (صفة تتبع باسم)
- **He enjoyed his stay in Aswan, so he decided to stay there for another two weeks.**
- **I don't like this dress. Could I buy another one?**

٤- الضمائر الغير محددة التالية تأخذ دائما فعل مفرد ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع
(someone / somebody / everybody /no one / nobody / anyone / everyone / person)
- **Somebody has cleaned the house. They have also watered the flowers.**
- **Someone is knocking at the door, I will go and see who they are**
- **Another kind of person is intelligent because they are good at understanding visual things.**

5- rise (rose / risen) (لا يليه مفعول) تشرق / يزداد / يستيقظ / يقف / يتصاعد
- **The sun rises in the east.** - **Prices have risen by 10%.** - **She rises at 6 every day.**

Raise (raised / raised) يرفع/ يجمع/ يربى/ يزيد (يليه مفعول)
- **The manager raised my salary.** - **Parents do their best to raise their children.**
- **They are raising money for the blind.** - **Raise your hand if you know the answer.**

---

6 - cause يسبب - **What caused the fire?**
cause of + اسم سبب - **What was the cause of the fire?**
reason for + اسم داع - مبرر - سبب - **Can you give the reason for leaving ?**
reason why + جمـلة كاملة - **Is there a reason why you can't come?**

---

7 - stay in/at (يقيم في(مكان) **- stay with (يقيم مع(شخص)** **- stay for(يقيم (لمدة)**
-It was cold and wet outside so we stayed at home
- We're going to stay with my grandparents on their farm.

8- see / hear / watch + object + (v.ing) Or مصدر inf. هذه الافعال ياتى بعد
-I saw him talking about the Pyramids on TV. عندما ندرك جزء من الحدث
- I saw him talk about the Pyramids on TV. عندما ندرك الحدث كله

---

9 - excited مثار / interested مهتم bored شاعر بالملل (غالبا عاقل)
-exciting مثير / interesting شيق/boring ممل (غالبا غير عاقل)
-I'm so excited to visit Egypt.. - **I'm bored with my job**
لاحظ ان الصفات التى تنتهى ب**ed**غالبا الاشخاص)) تعود على من يقع عليه الحدث
E.g. The match was exciting. - **Shikabala is an amazing player.**
اما الصفات التى تنتهى ب **ing**(تعود على من / ما يسبب الحدث او الشعور سواء (شئ او شخص

---

10 -encourage..شخص او مفعول ....+ to + مصدر: على يشجع
- **My parents encouraged me to study medicine.**
- **I encourage studying well to get high marks. (+V+ ing)** بدون مفعول

---

11 -remind someone to + inf.يُذكر شخص أن يفعل شيء # remind+ object + of يُذكر بشيء أو شخص
-Please remind me to post this letter. **-This souvenir reminds me of the last trip.**
– remember يتذكرتلقاء نفسه
-I can't remember her phone number. **-Remember to take your P.E. clothes to school**

---

12 – have interest in = be interested in مهتم بـ - interested to+ مصدر -interestingشيق للأشياء
They have a great interest in learning English. -They are interested to learn English.

They are interested in learning English. -The story is very interesting.

13. affect يؤثر علي - have a/ an effect (impact) on: تأثير علي

* affect يؤثر على : Pollution affects the environment badly.
* effect / impact تأثير : We are studying the effects of pollution on the environment.
* Pollution has a bad effect (impact) on people and the environment.

14- provide with يزود بـ / The government provides schools with modern sets.
- **provide for** يقدم لـ / The government provides modern sets for schools.

15- everyday يومي / Al-Ahram is an **everyday newspaper** - I go to work **every day** كل يوم

16-The number of animals **is** extinct فعل مفرد -**A number** of animals **are** extinct فعل جمع

17-miss (someone / train / bus / school / lecture / the goal)
- I have missed the train .
-**lose** (money / interest / something / his life / someone (by death)
-I 've lost my mobile

18- make (مفعول (صفة /مصدر
Let + مفعول + to مصدر بدون
cause **+ to مصدر ب**

- He **made** his son **happy** - She **made me respect** her.
- She **let me respect** her.
- They caused him to leave the company.

- أفعال القــول (**suggest / recommend**) يأتي بعدهمـــا (v.ing)

19- Leila **suggested doing / that I do** Exercise 2 again.
- My friend **recommended revising / that I revise** quietly
- أفعال القــول (suggest / recommend) يمكـــن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + فاعل + that)
- I **suggested (that) Leila do** Exercise 2 again.
- أفعال القــول (suggest / recommend) يمكـــن أن يأتي بعدهما (المصدر + should + فاعل + that)
- My friend **recommended that I should revise** quietly

20- Decide + to + المصدر &They **decided to move** into a new flat
Decide + on + اسم & You should **decide on your goal** in life.
Decide +that + فاعل + فعل &They **decided that they should study** hard.

21-

infect There is no evidence that the virus can infect humans.	▪ تصيب
infection Strict hygiene will limit the risk of infection.	▪ عدوى
infectious Corna is an infectious virus.	▪ معدي
infected we can get virus from the infected man.	▪ مصاب

22- breathe in = inhale = take air in يستنشق
Plants **breathe in** carbon dioxide

-breathe out = exhale = take air out يـزفر
Plants **breathe out** oxygen.

Breath نفس **breathing** عمليه التنفس
I can smell alcohol **on your breath**. People die if **their breath (breathing)** stops

---

23- illness تعب أو مرض **& disease** اسم أو نوع المرض
My uncle suffered from illness most of her life.
Cancer is a serious disease.

21-(Make / made / made)

make a discovery يكتشف	make a decision يقرر	make a mistake يخطئ
make a trouble يسبب متاعب	make the bed يرتب السرير	make friends يعمل صداقات
make a choice يختار	make a trip يقوم برحلة	make a suggestion يقترح
make a question يسأل	make a plan يخطط	make a promise يوعد
make a journey يقوم برحلة	make a phone call يعمل مكالمة	

(do / did / done)

do research يقوم ببحث علمي	do a favour يصنع معروفا	do repairs يقوم بإصلاحات
do homework يعمل الواجب	do shopping يتسوق	do business يقوم بعمل تجارى
do PhD يعمل دكتوراه	do better يتحسن	do his best يبذل قصارى جهده
do work يقوم بعمل	do a report on يعد تقرير عن	do a quiz يقوم بعمل مسابقة
do a hobby يقوم بهواية	do exercise يقوم بتدريب	do well يؤدي أداء جيدا
do damage يدمر	do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية

Listening

Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem. For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayoum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital. Abdelwahab didn't survive. Fortunately, Egypt became a pioneer in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital. It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad. Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Excutive Director of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships. And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called *Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death*. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and health

---

- Keeping a healthy heart

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps blood about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. This is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise–that means mum and dad as well as the children.

Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthy, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it. Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life.

HOW TO PERFORM FIRST AID



1- If you find an ill or *injured* person, you must *check* the area around him\her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move *closer* to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill? Do they have *severe* injuries?

2- If the person is *awake* but not *bleeding*, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for *signs* of injury or *infection*. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3- If the person doesn't reply, touch their *shoulder* or their foot and shout to see if they *react*, and remember to check for normal *breathing*.

4- If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the *emergency services* immediately.

5- If you know how to *perform CPR*, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is *lying on* their back on a *flat surface* such as the floor.

6- Place your hand on the centre of the person's *chest*. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and *lock* your fingers together. Make sure that shoulders are above your hands.

7- You don't have to *press down on* the person's chest very much–only five to six centimeters. Keep your hands *on* their chest and allow to *rise up* again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again

---

The Immune System's main function:

Our organs are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system comes from the cells and organs that work together to protect us from diseases. The immune system does this by destroying things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious

like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease. Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible. We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

Video Script

-How to do CPR

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives. So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often. Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base of your hand on the bone in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again. Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

Read Mahmoud's email to Fares :

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will inquire themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, right? I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect. Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

An email to a health website (WB. P.91)

To : Healthtoday@mail.com

From : Shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure to

see them. Unfortunately because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough, they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot. I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them to do it. I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?
I look forward to hearing from you.
Yours
Shady

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

Exercises on unit : 1 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- You shouldn't press hard on the injured man's ……………while doing CPR.
a. leg b. nose c. chest d. head
2. COVID19 is --------------------------- It is passed from the infected person to others quickly.
a. infection b. infected c. infectious d. infect
2. The actress …………… her role on the stage efficiently . All people admired it
a. makes b. speaks c. behaves d. performs
3. 2-You have to……………………… notes on what the lecturer says.
a. do b. take c. make d. have
4. There is a lot of smoke ; we could hardly (breathe - cough - eat - cry)
5. You never know how he is going to …………………… He is strange.
a. recry b. react c. replay d. reinvent
6. ……………… infection of the wound may occur easily if you sit beside or touch infected one.
a. Emergency b. Remedy c. Immediately d. Bacterial
7. The fire has caused ……………. damage to the building.
a. danger b. regular c. bacterial d. severe
8. I asked him about his name, but he didn't………… .
a. bleed b. respond c. describe d. express
9. Teachers should use various ……………. for dealing with problem students.
a. damages b. techniques c. devices d. muscles
10. Do you know what ………………… the house to fall?
a. reasons b. results c. causes d. makes
11. Smoking can seriously damage your …………… It causes a lot of diseases.
a. money b. wealth c. health d. death
12. A/ An(organ – virus – cell – heart) is a very small thing that causes diseases.
13. To(boost – deny – allege – threatens) means to help someone do something to improve or get better.
14.Antibiotics are used to treat the…………………in most parts of the body.
a) injection b) infection c) operation d) reflection
15-The machine……………………the metal into strong and long sheets used in buildings.
a) does b) damages c) presses d) irons
16- The nurse…………….her hand on the patient's head to make sure he's fine.
a) banged b) moved c) located d) placed
17- Mother doesn't often drink coffee because it keeps her…………..all the night.
a) asleep b) awake c) alive d)dead

18-The old man's........stopped suddenly and he was taken to the intensive care unit.
a) disease b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure
19- My friend given.........by a doctor to make him breathe again.He was about to die.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI
20-The young lady suffered................head injuries after the accident and was in hospital for 3 months.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) comfortable
21. A/ An ………………… is a part of your body that performs a job e.g the brain or heart .
a) organ b) member c) cell d) infected
22- The ------------- is the smallest separate part of an animal or a plant.
a) organ b) cell c) atom d) molecule.
23- The --------------- system protects you from infections and diseases.
a) immune b) digestive c) circulatory d) respiratory
24-To ------------- means to do something because something else has been done .
a) react b) reread c) repeat d) redo
25- Patients with COVID 19 should be isolated due to the danger of ----------------------
a) infection b) injection c) reaction d) infected .
26. To(boost – perform – support – deny)means to do an action
27. A/ An (cancer – diabetes – headache – infection) is a disease cause by virus or bacteria .
28. We should eat vegetables and fruits to(spend – step – remain – stay)healthy .
29. We should have a good(healthy – health – heal – healthless) to enjoy a good life .
30. The(training – performance – resistance – assistance)of our team is weak . We should make great efforts to win.
31. The surgeon (made – performed – carried – had) the operation successfully .The patient became well.
32. My uncle (made – performed – carried – had) a dangerous operation on his heart last week.
33. When he was in Africa , he got an (infected – infection – infecting – infectious) and stayed in bed for weeks .
34. We should avoid dealing with people who have (infectious – danger – flying – inventive)diseases
34. She died of a disease (causing – caused – causes – cause) by a mysterious virus .
35-Ahmed was given a part in the school play which will be....on the school theatre.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) decided
36-The firefighters....................................quickly when they heard the alarm.
a) reviewed b) reacted c) reflected d) reversed
37-We should use various.................................for dealing with lazy students.
a) diseases b) horrors c) techniques d) breakers
38-After a fight with the gang ,a policeman..........from a wound in his shoulder.
a) bred b) fed c) treated d) bled
39- After doing the operation for 10 hours, the surgeon lied ……………....on the ground as he was exhausted.
a) rough b) healthy c) flat d) active
40- We should read the........before we start using any new electrical set.
a) directions b) instructions c) licences d) chapters
41- Several people ignored the no-smoking..............and the police fined them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign
42- Scientists say that nearly 10% of the Earth's.........................is covered by ice.
a) ceiling b) roof c) surface d) depth
43- The doctor will give you a full...........................before the operation.

a) examination b) importation c) intention d) ingestion

44- Parents should..............................their sons to mix with only good people.

a) discourage b) prohibit c) encourage d) pull

45- If we see an old man who needs help, we should…………..him.

a) push b) guide c) avoid d) neglect

46. I noticed a frightening (react – reaction – reactor – actor)on her face when she saw the snake

47. We shouldn't(react – reaction – reacted – reactor) badly to poor or disabled people . We should help them.

48. Do you want me to do anything (other – also – else – another).

49. He got a serious(injured – injury – hurt – ill)when he had a car accident .

50. He got (injured – injury – illness – disease)while he was saving the baby from the burning house .

51. The emergency ………….. are struggling تصارع to cope with the number of call-outs.

a. services b. servant c. causes d. car

52. We can no longer have confidence in the quality of the air we ……………… .

a. feel b. breeze c. breathe d. cough

53. Our national team needs a big win to (boost - obligate - wrap - post) our confidence.

54. Environmental groups want a total ……………… on the dumping of nuclear waste.

a. cultivation b. prohibition c. proportion d. promotion

55. Air .... has reached dangerous levels in some cities.

a. pollution b. population c. expression d. evacuation

56. ………………. system produces substances to help fight infection and disease .

a. Immune b. Legal c. Local d. Conditioning

57. The results that scientists found did not show the presence of any forms of ……………… .

a. emergency b. bedding c. bacteria d. blanket

58. We should examine the ………..of our bodies every six months to be healthy.

a. organs b. cells c. members d. kidneys

59. I must have caught a (virus – organ – cell – fish) on holiday. I feel sick.

60. After her husband married another woman, she felt ……………… pride.

a. injuries b. injury c. injure d. injured

61. Protesters threw stones at police, who …………… with rubber bullets .

a. amended b. responded c. mended d. intended

62. When my father fainted suddenly, I called an ambulance ……………

a. immediately b. emergency c. regularly d. once

63. I can't think of any possible …………….. for his absence.

a. evacuation b. application c. expression d. explanation

64. The compamy needs a……….. to consult how to increase the sales.

a. exert b. expect c. expert d. except

65. You must leave immediately. You're in great ……………… here.

a. dangerous b. danger c. safe d. safety

66. It's illegal to use the fire alarm except in case of ……………….. .

a. fluency b. allergy c. frequency d. emergency

67. During fires , people should keep ………….to help the firefighters.

a. hungry b. claim c. calm d. angry

68. When I met my enemy , I stayed calm and just ……………. him.

a. climbed b. endangered c. ignored d. harmed

69. The coach's ……………… has improved a lot over the past season.

a. technique b. emergency c. cause d. performances

70. The victim suffered ………………. brain damage.

a. severe b. fantastic c. regular d. skillful

71. Local residents have …………… angrily to the news of closing the only hospital.

a. bled b. prohibited c. reacted d. injured

72- These exercises are good for your stomach……………………….

a) tissues b) skins c) bones d) muscles

73- The nurse…………………………….the baby in a blanket just after his birth.

a) wrapped b) pulled c) dumped d) removed

74- By midday, the sun had……………………….high in the sky and it was very hot.

a)risen b) increased c) decreased d) descended

75-My mother did not…………………him to take boxing lessons because she believed that this was a dangerous sport.

a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) cancel

76-Dr Farouk El Baz is the world's greatest…………………in remote sensing.

a) indicator b) explorer c) export d) expert

77- You mustn't tell anyone…………………… it's a secret between you and me.

a) other b) else c) another d) others

78-A doctor's first……………………….is to take care of the patients.

a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

79-The audience was clearly delighted with the…………………of the actors.

a) infection b) performance c) information d) reform

80. Husbands and wives usually disagree…………….the best way to spend their money.

a) about b) to c) for d)with

81. Boys and girls have to sleep in (despair – separate - desperate – aspire) rooms .

82. He lies …………… at night worrying about his job.

a. awake b. week c. awash d. award

83. He was …………… from a cut جرح on his head.

a. bleeding b. breeding c. breeder d. breathing

84. The body often ………………… to stress by becoming ill.

a. responds b. calls c. answers d. asks

85. After smellin a lot of ssmoke,my chest felt painful, and I was ……………… uncontrollably.

a. covering b. coughing c. weaving d. raffling

86. In 19th century England, …………. diseases were the principal cause of death.

a. intelligent b. infectious c. cautious d. marvelous

87. Nobody can be an …………… at everything.

a. exsert b. expect c. intelligent d. expert

88. It is not yet known whether these chemicals are ……………… to humans.

a. bleeding b. prohibition c. courageous d. dangerous

89. The book opens with an ……………. of why some drugs are banned.

a. evacuation b. application c. expression d. explanation

90-You'll need a variety of skills, (including -containing -consisting -enclosing) leadership and negotiating

91- The (make- function- do- job) of the heart is to pump blood around the body

92.What is the heart (make – do- job- mission)? - It pumps blood around the body .

93- You should do exercise to keep hearts (strength – strong – strengthen – power) .

94- We have to stop (destroy – damaging – hurt- harm) our health .

95- There are some bad habits that (damaging – destroy – spoil – corrupt) your health .

96- Doctors have to (learn – educate – give – instructor) us about regular exercise .

97- Some experts disagree (with- to – about – at) the dangers of having unhealthy hearts .

98- The AHC (erected – opened – inaugurated – start) in 2016 .

99-You (lost-missed-deprived-failed) the chance to travel with us to Luxor.

100-The (check- examine- examinations- test) of the heart are very important before doing a sport .

101- They had to put (up- off-in- away) the best technology .

102- Her (suddenly – sadly – sudden-suddenness) death made us shocked .

103- We should (do – make – take – give) regular exercise to keep fit .

104. Sneezing is the most common way (to – of – about – by) spreading an infection.

105. I couldn't eat the meal because it was (salt – salts – salute – salty).
106. I couldn't eat the meal because it has a lot of (salted – salt – salute – salty).
107-Eating vegetables and fruit can enhance (immune-mane- immunity – mine)
108- The skin is the boy's largest (member- organ- piece- place) .
109- You must cover your mouth when you (smile – cough- cry- run) .
110-Do you think we are all (response – responsibility – responsible – responsibly) for trying to stay healthy .
111- Do you think we all have a (response – responsibility – responsible – responsibly) to try to stay healthy.
112. Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and (do - make - design – devise) sure it is used.
113-We should take great (careful-care –carefully-careless) of old people
114. The research for the Coronavirus vaccine is done in..........with the University of Oxford.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration
115. The young actress usually replies immediately........comments on her posts.
a) at b) for c)about d) to
116. All charitable organisations count on the............of people to help the poor.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement
117. The patient's white blood...................count is low, so she needs immediate treatment.
a) organ cule c) cell d) atom
118. The little child inhaled the smoke and started...........................badly.
a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling
119.The evidence was not...enough for the judge to condemn the accused man.
a) affecting b) impressive c) persuasive d) moving
120.Scientists belovid-19.............can attack a variety of organs in the body.
a) virus b) germ c) bacterium d) tumour
121. People can fight infection more easily if they have a healthy.....and lifestyle.
a) plight b) right c) fight d) diet
122. The mother was embarrassed because her children…………………very badly in the party.
a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded
123. Bacteria and other microorganisms can be examined under the...............
a) scope b) horoscope c) microscope d) telescope
124. Passengers ar smoking is not allowed on the plane.
a) reminded b) remembered c) affected d) applauded
125- The two big cities, Cairo and Giza, are.....................by the River Nile.
a) united b) separated c) damaged d) planned
126- Breathing polluted air affects the…........badly and causes serious diseases.
a) skin) brain c) lung d) limb
127-The............why I like my job is that I meet all kinds of people.
a) reason b) explanation c) purpose d) cause
128-The article discusses a number of ways people can....our immune systems to fight diseases.
a) repair b) mend c) damage d) boost
129- It would be difficult to..........him leave his job for a new one
a) persuade b)make c) diet d) employ
130- I want to...............my English so that I can get a job in a bank.
a) prove b) improve c) qualify d) train
131- The minister refused to make an official......................about the new law.
a) advertisement b)sign c) announcement d) advancement
132-Students are always worried..........................exams.
a) about b)for c) with d) in
133- Mona read the whole research and.......................notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted
134- The ....who take part in the Olympics are tested for drugs.
a) coaches b) mechanics c) athletes d) reporters

135-We should take care(of- about- from- with)babies.
136- It was midnight and the children were still (awake –wake –waking-walk)
137- There was a lot of (bleed- gold- anger- blood)on
138-This piece of cloth (fails- feels- falls – fill) smooth.
139-My mobile Can't fini-Fi (sign-signal – mark- label). I have to change it.
140 - we should read well (-signals – marks- labels) stuck on the goods we buy
141- She was out of (breathathing- breath-breeze) after climbing the mountain
142-CPR stands fdiopulry(recurrence- resurrection-resuscitation- resistance)
143- A paramedic should know how to(make-take- perform – carry) CPR
should be (made – taken- done- carried) by trained paramedics
145ind a coach or anything to (lie-lay-lying-lain) the patient on
146- The injured man was (laying –lying—allowing- allaying) on his back.
147-The surface the patient on should be (tough-flat –horizon-uncomfortable)
148-The (press-pressure-price-brass) on the patient's chest may save his life
149-Egypt is famous (about -to -in - for)the unique pyramids.
150. A ....s a prize, for example a silver cup, that is given to the winner .
a. trophy b. trophic c. tropic d. trope
151. When I tried to lift the jug, the handle .... in my hand.
a. came up with b. came off c. came across d. came on
152. Youth like wearing a .... pair of jeans. It's fashion.
a. diet b. fight c. sight d. tight
153. On long flights, wear .... clothing and comfortable shoes.
a. lost b. louse c. loon d. loose
154- King Lear ted to -------------- *his kingdom* into three parts.
a) give b) divide c) make d) play
155- The old king had a large amount of-------------- like silver and gold
a) rich b) riches c) health d) beauty.
156- Cordelia couldn't think of a good ------------------ for her father.
a) answer b) ask c) request d) accusation
157- The (*Dukele* - princess – queen) of Kent is a very important man.
158- Kent thinks that it's (*kind – good – honest-foolish)* to tell Cordelia to go away.
159- When King Lear gets angry witnt, he touches his ----------------
a) *power* *b) sword* *c) poverty* *d) riches*
160 – My friend has strong (nose – ear – mouth – muscles) He can lift the box easily .
161-Every citizen has a (homework – duty – wealth – richness) towards his country .
162-This actress enjoys great ------------------ She is handsome .
a)beauty b) poverty c) sadness d) happiness
163- My father is a ----------------- man .He takes wise decisions .
a) sensible b) foolish c) fool d) stupid

synonym and antonym

1-This advertisement will help boost the sales . Boost here is the synonym of -------------
a) promote b) fail c) increase d) both a and c
2- She is not normal .The word normal here is the synonym of the word -------------
a) sane b) insane c) irrational d)abnormal
3-------------- is to mild as irrational is to normal .
a) Gentle b) Severe c) Unusual d) Abnormal
4-The word encourage is the antonym of the word -----------------
a) disapproved b) supported c)discouraged d) forced
5. When an injury or illness is very serious. "Serious" means ....
a. damage b. service c. severe d. several
6- The word "later" is an antonym to the word.......................
a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

7- The word "incompetence" can be the opposite to the word…………………
a) routing b) system c) space d) skill
8. All citizens should colrate to make our country a beautiful one. the synonym of the collaborate is--------------
a) avoid b) operate c) co operate d) participants

&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&

Grammar

MODAL VERBS OF NECESSITY, PROHIBITION AND LACK OF NECESSITY

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة علي الضرورة و التحريم و غياب الضرورة

1- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do..... (We have no other choice) مضطـــــــر أن
✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أمامنا اختيار بسبب القواعد والقوانين أو الظروف
- If she wants to start her course this year, she **has to apply** before the end of March.
- We **have to wear** helmets if we are going to take the motorcycle. (The law says so.)
- You **have to show** your passport when you leave the country.

✍ كما تستخدم في الأوامر:
- You **have to apologize** to Mona. You don't want to lose her as a friend. (advice)
- You can't go out. You **have to clean** your room first. (an order

---

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)
- I **had to work** six days a week. = -**It was necessary for me to work** six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. **I'll have to get up early**.
- **Have you ever had to go** to hospital?

- تستخدم **(do / does)** مع **(Have to / Has to)** في السؤال و النفي
- **Do you have to put on** a uniform at school?
- She **doesn't have to buy** a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم **(have got to / has got to)** بدلا من **(have to / has to)**
- I **have got to go** to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she **has got to take** a taxi.

- نستخدم **(have got to / has got to)** في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد
- **Have you got to be** at the office every day?
- **Has that man got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

✍ **must + infinitive: = it is necessary to ......** يجــــــب أن

✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن (الزام داخلي) اي إحساس قوي بضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم أو للتعبير عن أن شيء مهم بالنسبة لنا وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم فقط مع الضمائر I / We ومع You في حالة السؤال:
- I **must visit** my grandparents more often. (It's important to me that I do.)
- **Must you wear** that yellow tie?
(Is it important to you that you do it? This also suggests that it bothers يضايق me.)

✍ وتستخدم للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية
- You **mustn't be** late or dad will be angry. (strong advice)
- You **must wash** your hands before you eat. (strong advice)

وفي الأوامر كما تستخدم في القوانين والقواعد وعندما نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء:
- You **must clean** your room before you go out with your friends. (an order)
- Drivers and passengers of motorcycles **must wear helmets**. (a law)

✍ كما تستخدم في حالة توجيه دعوة أو التعبير عن مشاعر صادقة:

- You **must come** and see us at the weekend. - You **must try** a piece of my cake.

✍ تستخدم في الاستنتاج أو التعبير عن نتيجة منطقية: (سيتم شرحه بالتفصيل)

- **Dad must have left already. I don't see his car.**

✍ لاحظ استخدام للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل فقط :

- **I must go now.** • **I must see my doctor tomorrow.**

✍ **need / needs to + infinitive:**

✍ تستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء ضرورية فى الحاضر أو المستقبل

- **He needs to be busy all the time or his boss will be angry.**
- **We need to revise for next week's exam.**

✍- تستخدم Must في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد وتأتي في بداية السؤال:

- **Must he send the e-mail now?**

3- Had to : It was necessary to do..... اضطُـــــر أن

- تستخدم (Had to) للتعبير عن إلزام و ضرورة في الماضي

- We **had to do** a test at school today. - We **had to** take a taxi as it was raining heavily.

4- Mustn't : It is necessary NOT to do..... يجـــــب ألا

✍ **mustn't + infinitive:**

تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء ممنوع أو غير مسموح به أو تترتب عليه نتيجة سيئة إذا قمنا به:

- **You mustn't smoke in hospitals. = You aren't allowed to smoke in hospitals.**
- **= You aren't permitted to smoke in hospitals.**
- **= You are forbidden to smoke in hospitals.**
- **= You are banned from smoking in hospitals.**
- **= You are prohibited from smoking in hospitals.**
- **=You aren't permitted to smoke in hospitals. = you are forbidden to smoke in hospitals.**

(Mustn't = (be) not allowed = (be) not permitted to = (be) banned = (be) prohibited = (be) forbidden to)

- ويمكن أن تبدأ الجمل بالشيء الغير مسموح به

- **Smoking is not allowed in hospitals.** - **Parking is forbidden here.**

5- don't have to / don't need to / needn't + infinitive:

Doesn't have to / doesn't need to = It is NOT necessary to do.. لا داعي أن-غير مضطر

✍ تتخدم التعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع أو المستقبل

- **She isn't late for school so she doesn't have to / needn't hurry.**
- **When you are on holiday, you needn't go to bed early.**
- **She doesn't have to work on Saturday.**

6- - Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to.., so we didn't لم نضطر أن

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث لـــــم يتـــــم في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- **We didn't have to go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.**
- **I didn't have to do the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.**

7- Needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث تـــــم في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- **You needn't have brought your umbrella. It's not going to rain.**

- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We **already have a lot.**

(I didn't buy bread because we have some.)

- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.

(I bought bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

must / have to / will have to - في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم

- I **have to get up** early tomorrow. - **I'll have to send** the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعني يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs computer skills**.- I **need to finish** the job early. = I **must finish** it early.

&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&

Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises تمارين الوحدة الأولي Mr El Sebaei

1. You……..finish that report tonight if you're too tired. Midday tomorrow is the deadline.
   a) need to b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't
2. You …………buy a ticket before you can go into the sports stadium.
   a) o c) have to d) have
3. We ………….to buy any tomatoes. There are lots of them in the fridge.
   a) have b) mustn't c) need d) don't need
4. You can order your plane tickets online; you .... use a travel agent.
   a) mustn't b) don'ave to c) have to not d) don't need
5. We .... make sure that the customers are getting value for money.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) needn't
6. I can go on my own. You .... come with me.
   a) don't need to b) must c) have to d) need to
7. My children ……………. study ancient history at school next year.
   a) have to b) must c) needed d) needn't
8. We ………… buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
   a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) needn't
9. We ……… get up or go to bed at particular times.
   a) don't need to b) mustn't c) has got to d) don't have
10. We ………… forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
   a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) don't have to
11. I …………… get up very early on school days.
   a) have to b) mustn't c) needn't d) has to
12. You ………… take that train. There's another one in ten minutes.
   a) mustn't b) has to c) don't have to d) have to
13. You ……….. buy that book. I can lend you mine.
   a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) needn't
14. You ……………speak so loudly on your phone. It's very annoying.
   a) mustn't b) need to c) had to d) have to
15. When you arrive in another country, you ………….. show your passport.
   a) must b) has to c) had to d) have to
16. My staff and I …………… work twelve hours for six days a week.
   a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) had to d) have to
17. I ……………phone my friend this morning. I promised him I would.
   a) needn't b) have to c) must d) has to
18. In some countries, children …………wear school uniforms.
   a) don't need to b) didn't have to c) mustn't d) has to
19. Most school children in Britain …………… wear a school uniform.
   a) has to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) have to
20. You …………….. spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) must
21. You ……..…. take that book back to the library. You can keep it for another week.
   a) have to b) don't have to c) must d) can't
22. You ………….. pass your exams to go to university.

a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) have to

23. I really …..…… phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him when I had any news.
a) mustn't b) must c) had to d) have to

24. We …………. buy some milk from the shops because we don't have any.
a) mustn't b) need to c) don't need to d) may

25. I want to go to university. I ………….. apply before the end of the week.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) need to

26. You …………. see your doctor. You look ill.
a) must b) needn't c) can't d) may

27. School starts at 8 : 30. I ………… get there before that time.
a) might b) have to c) can d) may

28. You can stay at home if you want. You ………….. go shopping with us.
a) can't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) need to

29. I ……………hurry. My train leaves in 5 minutes.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to

30. These old buildings ……………knocked down.
a) have to be b) has to be c) had to be d) have to

31. I ………… go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
a) needn't b) won't c) didn't have to d) shouldn't

32. You …………… drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
a) needn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

33. We ………… give our homework to the teacher until next week.
a) didn't have to b) mustn't c) don't have to d) must

34. I was very tired yesterday. I ………….. go to bed early.
a) was b) must c) needn't d) had to

35. Last year, we ……..…. work 12 hours a day for six days to finish the project.
a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) have to

36. I have been tired all week. I …………. get more sleep.
a) mustn't b) has to c) had to d) must

37. We've got plenty of time. We …………. hurry.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) have to

38. We …………. lock the car. It's safe here.
a) mustn't b) has to c) needn't d) shouldn't

39. You …………. park here. It says a "No Parking area.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) have to

40. You …………… come if you don't want.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) have to

41. Stop! You'll be punished! You ………….. have parked here.
a) shouldn't b) didn't c) can't d) wouldn't

42. It's a holiday tomorrow, so I ………… get up early.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) won't have to

43. Last weekend, I …………… study hard for the exams.
a) have to b) has to c) needn't d) had to

44. The referee said to the footballer, "You …………. play like that."
a) mustn't b) has to c) needn't d) shouldn't

45. I …………… help my brothers because my mother was ill.
a) mustn't b) had to c) needn't d) didn't have to

46. I ……………go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) didn't have to

47. I had instructions that I .... to leave the door unlocked when I came home.
a) were b) am c) be d) was

48. Why …………to go to hospital last night?
a) do you have b) have you got c) must d) did you have

49. It's raining outside, you ………… take your umbrella with you.
a) must b) needn't c) had to d) may

50. You …………. do your homework today because tomorrow will be a holiday.
a) will not b) cannot c) don't have to d) don't need

51-I(mustn't - have to – should have – needn't) be at work at 8 a.m. or my boss will be furious.
52-You(should – have to – need to – needn't)buy a pen. I can lend you one.
53-You(mustn't – don't have to – need to – needn't)speak so loudly. We are in the library.
54-I(don't have t – shouldn't – needn't have – must)hurry. My train leaves in 5 minutes.
55-My son (has to – needn't – needn't have – need)study mathematics at school next year so that he can join the faculty of engineering.
56-You(have – have to – need to – don't need to)do all this hard work alone. I can help you.
57-Tomorrow is a national holiday. I (will have to – need to – won't have to – should)get up early.
58-We(have to – mustn't – won't have to – should have)forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
59-She's on holiday. She (doesn't have to – needs to – shouldn't have – needn't have)go to bed or get up at particular times.
60-I(shouldn't – have to – must – need) get up early on school days.
61-I(have to – must – need – should have)phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.
62-In some countries, children(don't have – don't need – don't need to – mustn't) wear school uniform.
63-People(mustn't – don't have to – should – need to)drive too fast in the city center.
64-We (should – need to – mustn't – don't have to)give our homework to the teacher until next week.
65-These old buildings(need – must – have to be – needn't)knocked down.
66-We(don't need to – need to – have to – should)cut the tree down – it can be part of the hotel garden.
67-I(don't have – needn't have – didn't have to – should)cut the grass myself yesterday. The gardener did it.
68-You (had to write – didn't have to write – needn't have written – should have written) such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.
69-You(should add – didn't have to add – needn't have added – needn't add)any more salt to the food. Now we can't eat it.
70-You(didn't have to – mustn't – must – don't need to)study hard when you come to our school. The lessons are very easy.
71-At my sports club, everyone (has to – should – may – might)wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
72-You(shall - could – need to – manage)get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
73-I (can – must – may – might)get some bread before the shop closes. I don't have any bread.
74-You (may – might – can – must)take it as soon as you get home. This is very important.
75-I (had - am able – am going – have)to stay at home because I was ill.

TRANSLATION

Choose the best Arabic translation:

1-A lot of people suffer from shortage of food. So, we should have sustainable agricultural projects to feed everyone.

١- يعاني الكثير من الناس من نقص الغذاء لذلك يجب أن يكون لدينا مشروعات زراعية مستدامة.
٢- يعاني الكثير من الناس من كثره الغذاء لذلك يجب أن يكون لدينا مشروعات زراعية مثمره.
٣- يعاني الكثير من الناس من نقص الغذاء لذلك يجب أن يكون لدينا مشروعات ثقافيه مستدامة.
٤- يعاني الكثير من الناس من نقص الغذاء و يجب أن يكون لدينا مشروعات زراعية مستدامة.

2- Parents should teach their children how to behave towards others and how to respect the elderly people.

١-يجب علي الوالدين أن يتعلموا أطفالهم كيف يتصرفوا تجاه الاخرين وكيف يحترموا كبار السن
٢-يجب علي الوالدين أن يعلموا أطفالهم كيف يعاملوا الاخرين وكيف يحترموا كبار السن
٣-يجب علي الوالدين أن يعلموا أطفالهم كيف يتصرفوا تجاه الاخرين وكيف يحترموا كبار المقام
٤-يجب علي الوالدين أن يعلموا أطفالهم كيف يتصرفوا تجاه الاخرين وكيف يحترموا كبار السن

3- Reforming education involves new methods to combine students with special needs with their colleagues with the same curricula. This will help them combine with their society in a better way.

١.يتضمن اصلاح التعليم طرقا جديدة لدمج الطلاب ذو الاحتياجات العامه مع زملائهم بنفس المناهج التعليمية ، مما يساعد على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل افضل
٢.يتضمن اصلاح التعليم طرقا جديدة لدمج الطلاب ذو الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم في المناهج التعليمية ، مما يساعد على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل اقوي
٣.يتضمن اصلاح التعليم طرقا جديدة لدمج الطلاب ذو الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم في المناهج التعليمية ، مما يساعد على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل اقوي

٤.يتضمن اصلاح التعليم طرقا جديدة لدمج الطلاب ذو الاحتياجات الخاصة مع زملائهم بنفس المناهج التعليمية ، مما يساعد على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل افضل

Choose the best English translation:

تشجع الحكومه الشباب علي بدء مشروعاتهم وعدم انتظار الوظيفه الحكوميه وذلك بتوفير القروض والتسهيلات التي تساعد علي نجاح مشروعاتهم لكي يكونوا مواطنين صالحين في مجتمعاتهم

1- The government encourage young people to start their projects and to wait to governmental Jobs .This happens through provide the loans and facilities which helps the success of their projects in order to be good citizens in their society
2- The government encourages young people to start their projects and not to wait to governmental Jobs .This happen through provide the loans and facilities which helps the success of their projects in order to be good citizens in their society
3- The government encourageyoung people to start their project and to wait for governmental Jobs .This happens through providing the loans and facilities which help the failure of their projects in order to be good citizens in their society
4-the government encourages young people to start their projects and not to wait for governmental Jobs .This happens through providing the loans and facilities which help the success of their projects in order to be good citizens in their society

٢. يجب على الشباب أن يكون لهم دور في المجتمع الذي يعيشون به وذلك بالمساعدة في حل المشكلات التي تواجه الناس.

1. Young people should have a rule in the society in which they live by helping to solve the problem facing people.
2. Young people should have a role in the society in which they live by helping to solve the problems facing people.
3. Young people should have a rule in the society in which live by helping to answer the problems facing people.
4. Young people should have a role in the society in which live by helping to answer the problems facing people.

٣-بعض الناس يفضلون الحياة البسيطة والصحية في الريف. فهناك يعيشون بعيدًا عن دخان المصانع ونمط الحياة المتسارع وازدحام وسائل النقل في المدينة.

1. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country. There, they avoid the smoke of factories, the speed of city life and the crowded means of transport.
2. Some people prefer the simple and health life of the country. Here, they avoid the smoke of factors, the speed of city life and the crowded means of transport.
3. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country. There, they avoid the smoke of factors, the speed of city life and the crowded means of transport.
4. Some people prefer the simple and health life of the country. Here, they avoid the smoking of factories, the speed of city life and the crowded means of transport.

TEST ONE

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many experts disagree ....the importance of having a healthy heart.
a. With b- to c- on d- about
2. Keep the hands on the chest and allow it ....again.
a. rise b- raise c- to rise d- to raise
3. His special ....of scratching lines into the colour is still frequently used.
a. Technical b- technology c- technique d- technics
4. If you know how to ....CPR , you have to do this to help the patient.
a. Make b- perform c- go on d- carry on
5. Eating vegetables with green leaves ....our immune system.
a. Help b- helps c- are helping d- is helping
6. You ....shout or make noise in the classroom.
a. Don't have b- shouldn't have c- are not to d- mustn't
7. The pain is of ....intensity and lasts anywhere from 15 to 180 minutes.

a. Severe b- severity c- saver d- savior

8. He …………………… angrily to the news of his dismissal.

a. Reacted b- reactive c- reaction d- intact

9. A heartbeat is when the.....of the heart contract and push blood around the body.

a. Tissues b- issues c- joints d- muscles

10. It is our ………….to defend our country against enemies.

a. Work b- duty c- job d- profession

11. The queen granted him the …of Lord due to his efforts to save his country in the war.

a. Nickname b- surname c- title d- post

12. You …………….put a bandage and press it down on the area that is bleeding.

a. Might b- may c- has to d- must

13. She give all her old clothes ……………… to the orphans.

A. Out b- in c- up d- away

14. It took me a long time to ……………… him to do the right thing.

a. Persuade b- convince c- make d- let

15. If you are in Egypt, you ……… attend my wedding.

a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't

16. He has lost his business, his reputation, his good ……, his savings and his career.

a. person b- personage c- character d- characteristic

2) Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer:

Many people in our society don't have the minimal knowledge of awareness of health care. This is a great problem because they can't bear the responsibility to stay healthy and aren't able to help their family members in the time of crises, either. So, It's the role of aware people to persuade them to start learning about such issues, like boosting their immune system. Some people's immune system work better than other people's. We all want our immune system to be strong so we can stay healthy. We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables with green leaves.

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. while health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity from all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene in which we must wash our hands before meals. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, Sportspeople have a fit body. They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But coming to healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside.

A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, This requires self-control and well determination. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But try to focus on it as we all know that "Health is wealth".

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (one mark each)

1- Burning the excess fat makes us…………………… .

a) enormous b) svelte c) colossal d) very big

2- Many gyms and workout centres are opened because of………………… .

a-The low demand for a fit and healthy body.

b-The little demand for a fit and healthy body.

c-The decreasing demand for a fit and healthy body.

d-The increasing demand for a fit and healthy body.

3-The immune system's function is to ………………… .

a) deteriorate our bodies b) infect our bodies
c) protect our bodies d) damage our bodies
4- The underlined word "maintain" means…………………. .
a) keep b) waste c) converse d) spend
5- Washing your hands before meals is a form of ……………………… .
a-sanitation b) hygiene c) personality d) energy
6- The underlined word" *crises*" means ………………………. .
a) serious problems b) something pleasing
c) something great d) something funny
7-The awareness of health care is …………………… .
a) recognizing its importance b) neglecting its importance
c-ignoring its importance d) forgetting its importance
8- How can people maintain fit and healthy bodies?
a) By eating healthy food b) By doing exercises
c) By doing sports d) All of them

3) Choose the best English translation: (3 marks)

١- تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى جذب الاستثمارات العربية والأجنبية لدعم اقتصادنا القومي. فهذه الاستثمارات تشجع على خلق صناعات جديدة.

1. The Egypt government aim to attract Arab and foreign investment to support our national economy. They encourage the establishment of new industries.
2. The Egyptian government aims to attract Arab and foreign investments to support our national economy. They encourage the establishment of new industries.
3. The Egyptian government aim to attach Arab and foreign investments to support our national economy. They encourage the establishment of new industries.
4. The Egyptian government aim to attach Arab and foreign investment to support our local economy. They encourage the establishment of new industries.

3) Choose the best Arabic translation: (3 marks)

2-During the coronavirus crisis, online education has become the only way for the students to complete their education.

١ أثناء أزمة فيرس كورونا أصبح التعليم عبر النت الطريقة الوحيدة للطلاب لاستكمال تعليمهم.
٢ أثناء مشكله فيرس كورونا أصبح التعليم عبر النت الطريقة الوحيدة للطلاب لاستكمال تعليمهم.
٣ أثناء أزمة فيرس كورونا أصبح التعليم في النت الطريقة الوحيدة للطلاب لاستكمال تعليمهم.
٤ أثناء أزمة فيرس كورونا أصبح التعليم عبر النت الطريقة الوحيدة للطلاب لاستكمال التعليم.

5) Write an essay of about one hundred and eighty (180) words on the following:

"The advantages and disadvantages of modern technology"





scrap	خرده	festival	مهرجان	meal	وجبه
normal	طبيعي	events	احداث	amount	كميه
heavy	ثقيل	a turkey	ديك رومي	quantity	كميه
hungry	جوعان	spoons	معالق	eat out	يأكل بالخارج
popular	محبوب - شعبي	dishes	اطباق	occasion	مناسبه
Christmas	كريسماس	pots	اواني	prepare	يعد- يجهز
roasted turkey	ديت رومي	pans	اواني	serve	يخدم - يقدم
include	يشمل	surprised	مندهش	traditional	تقليدي
spring rolls,	لفائف	advice	نصيحه	get together	يتقابل
noodles	نودلز - شعريه	difference	اختلاف	excerpt	مقتطفات
start	يبدأ	lamb	خروف	old-fashioned	موضه قديمه
restaurants	مطاعم	cookies	مقرمشات	thanksgiving	عيد الشكر
grapes	عنب	potatoes	بطاطس	articles	مقالات
midnight	منتصف الليل	pie	فطيره	questionnaire	استبيان
herring	رنجه	fry	يقلي	preferences	تفضيلات
jar	كوز	parents	الوالدين	onions	بصل
add	يضيف	chicken	فرخه	cheap	رخيص
prawns	جمبري	cornbread	خبز الذره	expensive	غالي
fried egg	بيض مقلي	clear	واضح	hot	ساخن
shellish	اصداف	seafood	طعام بحري	rare	نادر
describe	يصف	vegetable	خضار	salty	مملح
takeaway food	طاعم جاهز	biscuits	بسكويت	spicy	متبل
countryside	الريف	cost	يتكلف	sweet	حلو
the British	الانجليز	fried rice	رز مقلي	Oysters	المحار
attractive	جذاب	deceive	يخدع	type	نوع - يكتب
complicated	معقد	exit	مخرج	extremes	ظروف قاسيه
confused	مرتبك	anger	غضب	compare	يقارن
boring	ممل	deserve	يستحق	language	لغه
personal questions	اسئله شخصيه	truth	الحقيقه	helpful	مساعد
repeat	يعيد - يكرر	send	يرسل	options	اختيارات
snack	وجبه خفيفه	ill health	صحه عليله	details	تفاصيل
rules	قواعد	anger	الغضب	distant	بعيد
Personally	شخصيا	power	سلطه - قوه	name	اسم - يسمي
respect	يحترم - احترام	inheritance	ميراث	particular	خاص
relatives	اقارب	succeed	ينجح	products	منتجات
rude	وقح	loyalty	الاخلاص - الولاء	achieve	يحقق
vertically	عموديا	income	دخل	festivals	مهرجانات
belief	اعتقاد	lie	ينام - يكذب	popularity	شعبيه
soup	شوربه	trust	يثق - ثقه		

Definitions

amount	a quantity of something	كمية
celebrate	do something fun to show that an event is special	يحتفل ب
eat out	have a meal outside your home	يأكل خارج المنزل
get together	meet people and spend time with them	يلتقي-يجتمع مع
traditional	old ways of doing things that don't change A way of doing something that has existed for a long time	تقليدي

occasion	a time when something special happens	مناسبة
prepare	get something ready to eat or use	يعد – يجهز
serve	give people food or drink	يقدم طعام
enormous	very big	ضخم – كبير
popular	Liked or enjoyed by a large number of people.	شائع - محبوب
rare	Not done ,seen , happening , etc, very often	نادر
salty	Containing or tasting of salt	مملح
spicy	Having a strong taste	متبل
sweet	Containing , or tasting as if it contains a lot of sugar	حلو المذاق
special	Not ordinary or usual / different from what is normal	خاص
snack	A small meal or amount of food eaten in a hurry .	وجبه خفيفه
questionnaire	A written list of questions that are answered by a number of people	استبيان

Expressions

eat out	يأكل بالخارج	On occasion	في مناسبة
get together	نلتقي	Serve food	يقدم طعام
a quantity of	كمية من	Thanksgiving day	عيد الشكر
prefer .....to	يفضل عن	decide to	يقرر أن
gather to	يجتمع لـ	decide on	يصمم على
arrive in	يصل إلى	walk out of	الخروج من
able to	قادر على	start to	تبدأ في
amount of	كمية من	ready to	جاهز لـ
keep out of	ابتعد عن	surprised to	مندهش لـ
expect to	يتوقع أن	worried about	قلق لاجل
bowl of	وعاء – سلطانية من	stay at	ابقى في
Native Americans	سكان أمريكا الأصليين	take place	تحدث
Keep out of	ابتعد عن	a great deal of	قد را كبيرا من
Pumpkin pie	فطيرة قرع عسلي	for me	بالنسبة لي
Make a questionnaire	يصنع استبيان	on TV	
do a questionnaire	يجاوب علي استبيان	In my opinion	فى رايى
Sweet water	ماء عذب	It is thought that	من المعتقدأن
Popular with	محبوب من	It is important to	من المهم أن
Believe in	يؤمن بـ		
A bunch of grapes	عنقود عنب	It is ok to make noise	لا بأس في إحداث ضجة
Mother tongue	اللغة الاصلية	The start of the new year	بداية العام الجديد
Go native	يتصرف مثل اهل البلد	take it in turns	يأخذها بالتناوب
Traditional ways	طرق تقليدية	It achieved a great deal of	حققت قد را كبيرا من
they are right to	هم على حق	complete the mind map	يكمل الخريطة الذهنية
fall asleep	ينام - يغفو	It is believed	من المعتقدأن
the events take place	تجري الأحداث	made a good breakfast	أعد إفطا را جيدا

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
donate	يتبرع	donation - donor	تبرع - متبرع		
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمه	organised	منظم
employ	يوظف	employer- employee -employment	صاحب عمل –موظف - توظيف	employable	قابل للتوظيف
amaze	يذهل - يدهش	amazement	دهشه	amazed - amazing	مندهش - مدهش
support	يؤيد	support - supporter	تأييد - سلوك	supportable - supportive	حامل - ساند
desire	يذهل - يدهش	desire	دهشه	desirable	مندهش
benefit	يستفيد	benefit	فائده	beneficial	نافع - مفيد
		prestige	مكانه اجتماعيه	prestigious	

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonyms	Antonyms	المعنى
celebrated	مشهور	famous	unknown	غير معروف
traditional	تقليدي	customary	modern	حديث
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	nasty	كريه
native	اصلي	Original / indigenous	immigrant	مهاجر
rude	وقح	impolite	polite	مؤدب
popular	محبوب	Liked / enjoyed	Unpopular	غير محبوب
rare	نادر	Scarce / seldom	usual	معتاد
salty	مملح	Bitter / sour	sweet	حلو

Language Notes

1- taste (v) يتذوق
When my mother cooks, she usually tastes it.
taste (n) ذوق - طعم - مذاق
My mother's food has a nice taste.
tasty (adj) (لذيذ المذاق) مع الأكل والشرب
My mother cooks very tasty dishes every day. We like her food
Tasteful (adj) حسن الذوق
They bought tasteful furniture. This piece of music is tasteful

2- a plate طبق - a dish طبق - طعام
- Each one has their private plate when we eat .
-Mahshi is my favourite dish.

7- fall asleep ينام - fall ill يمرض - fall silent يصمت - fall vacant وظيفة تصبح خالية

8- for Muslims , Ramadan is a great festival مهرجان .
-The Americans celebrate thanksgiving Day عيد الشكر with a turkey .

9-It is thought that Egypt is the land of civilization.
- It is believed that the Arab countries will co operate in the future.
The Arab countries are believed to co operate in the future
-In my opinion , tourism is considered the first earner of our national income .

10 -special - خاص بفئة أو طبقة (لا يمتلكه ولكن يميزه)
Doctors and nurses wear special clothes.
private خاص بشخص أو ملك شخص (يمتلكه)
We have a private car .

11- sleep
• I always sleep at 12 at night ينام
sleepy • يغلبه النوم - منعوس
While I was watching the film, I felt sleepy.
asleep نائـــم
• The baby is asleep.
fast asleep • مستغرق فى النوم
He is fast asleep, He doesn't move.
sleeping • صفة لغير العاقل
The train has sleeping rooms / carriages.

12 - gather يجمع - يتجمع -His supporters gathered in the main square
- collect يجمع - My hobby is to collect / gather stamps

13- fashionموضة -fashionable مساير للموضة - old-fashionموضة قديمة = out of fashion -fashion house بيت أزياء

Story definitions تعريفات القصة (مستر هشام)

inheritance	The money , property , etc, that you receive from someone when they die
loyalty	The quality of being faithful in your support of somebody
anger	The strong feeling that you have when something bad has happened
deceive	To make somebody believe something that is not true .
exist	To be real / to be present in a place or situation
lie	To say or write something that you know is not true
income	The money that a person , a region , a country , etc , earns from work
succeed	To achieve something that you have tried to do or get
trust	To believe that somebody is good , sincere مخلص and honest
truth	The true facts about something
deserve	If sb deserves something , it is right to have it

@@

LISTENING TEXT

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious about the food you eat. De you eat lamb and fatta, like my family does at Eid al-Adha?

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving. Hoda. We don't eat lamb, though. We eat turkey. Have you had turkey before? It's alot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread, it's delicious. And we have sweet potatoes. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I feel asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much, Do you have any special dessert at Eid al-Adha?

Hoda : No, we just have cake or ice cream, but for Eid al-Fitr we have delicious cookies called kahk. I'm feeling hungry now!

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Yes, that's the best thing about Fid al-Adha here, too. Great. | can't wait!

An old fashioned thanksgiving


Mayflower



In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans. Thanksgiving is a day when families get together to remember these events. It is celebrated in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old–Fashioned Thanksgiving. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children. "Now, about dinner; she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional Thanksgiving dinner." "Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy. "Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. All you children have to do is to keep out of the way, and let Prue and me work." The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big. I know: said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me, she laughed

---

Read the article about how people show respect when they have meals together :

A Personally, I think it's important to respect our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

B As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

New Year celebration around the world

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food, However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular dish is always tamales, which is

made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves. However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.
In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.
In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called 'herring' at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.
Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell is very strong.

Meals from around the world

Nasi Goreng

Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean 'fried rice' in Indonesia. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters

Oysters are a type of shellfish that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants

Mochi

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Food in the UK (workbook p. 95)

The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips. The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other takeaway food, too. The British also like spicy food.

Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb, which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

Writing a professional questionnaire

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use in important. Thequestions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one. For example, ―Do you go abroad often with your friends‖ And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember.
When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions. Before people start to forget!

Video Script

- Festival meals from different countries.

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let' look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional fattah. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls, noodles, fish and chicken.

@@

Exercises on unit : 2 (Voc.)

EXERCISES ON VOCABULARY

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1-The quantity of something is called......................

a- Amount b- quality c- mountain d- mount

2- It's ………. in Egypt to eat feseikh on Sham el Nesseim .

a) traditional b) custom c) convention d) punctual

3. To meet people and spend time with them is to …………….

a- Get together b- get in c- get up d. get away

4- My mother hasn't prepared any food for us so shall we eat…………..?

a) in b) out c) of d) over

5-The old ways of doing things are called. ....

a- traditional b- habits c- festivals d- feasts

6- A polite waiter ....us when we were in the restaurant.

a) introduced b) presented c) served d) hoped

7-A/An............................ is a time when something happens.

a. custom b. habit c. occasion d. tradition

8. People who want to lose weight ,should follow a ....

a- meal b- race c- diet d. regime

9. As a teacher he was highly .... for his efficiency and patience.

a- respected b- respectful c- respectable d- respect

10- Most big companies use film ------------------- to make their advertisements on TV.

a) celebrities b) celebrate c) producer d) educators

11- Zamalik has trained hard in ----------------- for the big game with El Ahli.

a) prepare b) preparatory c) preparation d) proportion

12-Our family has an old --------- to collect every week in a house to discuss our problems .

a) tradition b) feast c) habit d) festival

13- It is the ------------- in that country for women to marry young .

a) habit b) traditional c) custom d) customary

14- Most youth like eating out as the food is............

a. tasteful b. taste c. nasty d. delicious

15-Waiters like regular.............and serve them well.

a) custom b) habit c) customary d) customer

16- After finishing the lesson , students ---------- round their teacher to thank him..

a) gathered b) together c) collect d) collection

17-Detectives spent two weeks .... evidence to help them find the criminal.

a. gathering b. saying c. telling d. giving

18- Writing letters to friends has become an old ----------------- nowadays.

a) fashionable b) fashion c) old-fashioned d) cushion

19- My sister likes new dresses so much . She is ------------------

a) fashionable b) fashion c) old-fashioned d) cushion

20- Despite the big disaster of the earthquake , many people --------------------.

a) died b) alive c) survived d) left

21- If you want to lose weight, you should limit the of salt in your meals.

a- Amount b- quality c- equality d- mount

22. There are different options for vegetarians .... this restaurant's menu.

a- in b- onto c- by d- on

23. ...., I think it is important to wash a lot in the summer.

A-Personal b- personnel c- In person d- personality

24. He is strongly associated with Cairo as I work in it, but my .... city is Zagazig.

a-National b- local c- nationality d- native

25 He............asleep while he was watching the film.

a- Filled b- fell c- dropped d- flew

26.Do you want your eggs fried or ....

a grilled b boiled c cooked d smashed

27- This restaurant ----------------- the lamb with new potatoes and green beans.

a) service b) surfs c) serves d) swerves

28- Our relatives meet together on special ---------------like feasts.

a) funerals b) occasions c) joys d) actions

29-We --------------- our 25th anniversary in Luxor .

a) celebrate b) separate c) collect d) gather

30- The hard disk is designed to store huge -------------- of data.

a) quatity b) mass c) amounts d) quality

31- After the ship sank , we didn't find his body.We don't know whether he is --------- or dead .

a) save b) alive c) survived d) dying

32- Some people travelling abroad, don't come back to their -------- country for a long time.

a) nation b) national c)north d) native

33-The following ---------------- is taken from Shakespeare's play " Hamlet".

a) port b) extract c) distract d) attract

34- I can recommend the chef's -------------------- of the day . It's delicious.

a) plate b) pan c) pot d) dish

35- Let's --------------- together after graduation to celebrate this occasion .

a) come b) bring c) get d) bring

36- She is conceited as she doesn't………..my calls and doesn't apologize.

a-reply b- answer c- respond d-payback

37.This is a ....restaurant ,It serves shrimps and wonderful sea creatures .

a meat b vegetable c seafood d chicken

38.The soup is too ....I can't eat it .

a salt b salty c sweet d spices

39.Ful Medames is popular ....all Egyptians .

a in b of c for d with

40.I can..............................this questionnaire easily and quickly .

a do b make c take d give

41.The Chinese use ....to eat with rather than spoons .

a spoons b chopsticks. c brushes d forks

42.The young should..................................the elders and help them.

a neglect b ignore c respect d detest

43. Rice is one of the most important ....in making mahshi.

a elements b ingredients c components d factors

44.We shouldn't be ....to others . We should be polite.

a polite b modest c rude d decent

45. Ola's fiancé has lied………………………..her about his work and age.

a-On b- to c- for d- by

46- Some students need --------------- treatment because of their hard circumstances .

a) bad b) cruel c) special d) harsh

47.The on the Plane were terrified because of the air leak.

a.riders b. passengers c– voyagers d– hikers

48.Some travellers could………………..the terrible accident.

a. save b. live c . survive d. die

49.Diabetic people shouldn't eat the dishes which are full of…………..

a.sweat b. salt c. sweets d. spices

50. Nowadays, we no longer ……….our friends abroad by letters , we use e-mails

a. connect b. contact c. communicate d. keep in touch

51. We……………………the right to support our neighbours in the time of need.

a. have b. are c. do d. can

52.Dictionaries are very……………………for teachers and students looking up new words.

a. interested b. helpless c. helpful d. boring

53.Some people prefer to have a……………..before their main meals.

a. snake b. sunk c. snack d. sunk

54.Falafil is a very……………………meal in Egypt.

a. popularity b. fame c. common d. know

55.I have a habit to visit my……………….on feasts.

a. relations b. realities c. relatives d. relationship

56.Eating your …………………at regular times is a healthy habit.

a. mails b. malls c. mills d. meals

57 .The opening of the parliament is really a historic........in any country.

a) accident b) situation c) occasion d) affection

58. The farmers in Egypt wear …………….clothes.

a) updated b) modern c) gradual d) traditional

59. Zamalik .... the Egyptian tournament win after a long time in the stadium..

a) shared b) celebrated c) saddened d) collaborated

60. Some people doubt the...........of life On Mars.

a) foundation b) existence c) establishment d)excitment

61. When I entered the train, there were a lot of …………….. It was crowded.

a) pilots b) passengers c) hosts d) hostesses

62- We have got together (in – on – of – at) many different occasions .

63- please , keep (out – at – about – in) of the grass.

64. My sudden question made my friend Ahmed …………….

a) surprise b) surprised c) surprising d) surprisingly

65. The world cup in Qatar is an important…………..that a lot of people arewaiting it.

a) accident b)plan c) eventd d) feast

66. A lot of people like eating …….like fish and shrimps.

a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d. fats

67. Famous chefs add the correct..........of water to the food recipe.

a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

68. My father looks .... my grandfather's business until he gets better.

a) for b) up c) like d) after

69 After the plane crashed, a child was the only......... passenger.

a) survive b) survival c) surviving d) survived

70. The Indian people don't eat.....as they honour cows as special animals.

a) poultry b) beef c) seafood d) nuts

71.Shikabala is …………….one of the best players in Egypt.

a) accepted b) researched c) considered d) denied

72. We all should be……………..to our beloved country Egypt.

a- proud b- disloyal c- keen d-loyal

73. We should use the emergency ………………… in case of fire.

a-outlet b- excile c- exit d- clue

74. My friekd has had a bid…………… from his parents. He becomes so rich

a- heritage b- heredity c- an inheritance d- heir

75. We should teach our children to tell the…………….and never lie.

a-truth b- myths c- fact d- reality

76. When we feel……………….,we should control it not to hurt others.

a- huger b- hungry c- anger d- banger

77- We shouldn't……………….people who are liars.

a- see b- prevent c.trust d. assess

78- ……….is one of the most important qualities that friends show us.

a-betrayal b- lying c- disloyalty d- loyalty

79. Someone called us claiming he is a bank clerk to know our secret code, but I think it is trying to……us.
a-take up b- deceive c- encourage d- correct
80-My father let me buy I wanted when we were in Alexandria.
a-whoever b- whatever c- whosever d-ever
81-I was surprised as I didn't to see her in the party.
a- except b- accept c- expected d-extract
82-They………………suddenly on the noise the children made.
a-woken b- woke c- awoke d- wake
83-We should be…………….when we deal with the crook.
a-careless b- intelligent c-careful d-smart
84. Your father's cruelty doesn't ……………..he doesn't love you.
a-main b- mean c-realise d-direct
85-A lot of film stars are keen on attending the Cannes film -------------------
a) festival b) party c) feast d) funeral
86.My………………attended my wedding in a big hall
. a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters
87.My friend has worked hard to…….his goal and become a doctor.
a)score b) achieve c) fight d) astonish
88.The pliceman asked the thief to ………his saying in front of the judge.
a) report b) announce c) repeat d) cancel
89.Khan el Khalili's old streets….most tourists as they are similar to each other.
a) refuse b) confuse c) diffuse d) reject
90- (Shrimps – Shark – Koshari - Herring) is smoked fish .
91. The journalist asked the minister to give more …………….about the project
a) times b) plots c) chances d) details
92. Some movie are not…..for children as they have violent scenes.
a) suitable b) available c) reputable d) avoidable
93. The desert……….suits some kinds of fruits.
a) climate b) atmosphere c) soil d) depth
94. Some kinds of fruits grow in humid ……………..like dates.
a) climate b) atmosphere c) soil d) depth
95. My mother like wearing ………………..clothes likes galabeyas and veils.
a) old-fashioned b) fashionable c) modernised d) updated
96. The children had a lot of…..when they watch comedy films..
a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d)fun
97. Universities should do more to……….young people for the world of work.
a) make b) prepare c) recommend d) advise
98. My brother dreams of joining the navy to…….his country and travels at sea.
a) serve b)deny c) condemn d) employ
99.Many cities around the world have different …………for different times of, the year which the people celebrate with different traditions.
a) festivals b) ceremonies c) games d) sports
100. Indian food usually tastes very…………as they use the hottest pepper in it.
a) sweet b) tasteful c) cold d) spicy
101.Science gives us hope that many diseases will not…………in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure
102. The illness of Corona Virus can cause a loss of smell and……………
a) hearing b) sight c) touch d) taste

103.The manager is always the first to..........at work in the morning.
a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach
104. To apply for a job ,you must have at...........five years' experience to get the job.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least
105. I regret leaving my job. It was the worst.......I've ever made. I'm unemployed
a) decide b) decision c) decisive d) deciding
106. The criminal was arrested on his..........at the airport to travel abroad.
a) depatrure b) arrival c) finding d) disappearance
107. My mother always insists that my little brother should ....out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) give d) keep
108.The manager says that the next meeting will take..........on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in
109.Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the........profits and we had to close it-
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting
110.The Pyramids are one of the most...........touristic places with tourists in Egypt •
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular
111.This camera has many................. features at a very good price.
a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted
112. You must always have the.........that you can achieve you goals in life.
a) belief b) feature c) quality d) love
113. You must read the........of the novel to understand it better.
a) presentation b) introduction c) introductory d) chapter
114. The factory in our city is able to……....most of the cooking oil we need.
a) produce b) consume c) buy d) spoil
115.We should........our heritage and keep it.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect
116.This supermarket sells meat......like hot dogs and burgers.
a) examples b) goods c) items d) products
117. We should follow the safety ………………… at hometo avoid home accidents .
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules
118. The price of the room at this hotel doesn't.....lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose
119. Taha Hussein used to write a regular......in Al Ahram every Friday.
a) leaflet b) brochure c) article d) search
120. We all like to be....................members of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected
121.Mountains rise up......................out of the ground.
a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically
122. Scientists…………………....new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) introduce b) present c) invite d) prevent
123.Nada's style of wearing clothes is in the............ of her mother.
a.celebrated b. celebration c. occasion d. tradition
124. Many companies can't.........the economic crisis caused by the spread of the Coronavirus.
a) keep b) dissolve c) call d) survive
125. We need to create a/an.........in which business can prosper.
a) air b) breath c) climate d) location
126. I...........you, but I don't think your solution will work.
a) case b) cause c) design d) respect
127. We used to …………. together and discuss our problems.

a. set b. make c. leave d. get

128. We have ……….. a lot sweets for my sister's birthday party.

a. disappeared b. appeared c. compared d. prepared

129. My younger brother always tells the ………….. He never ……………..

a) failure- lies b) truth- lies c) lies - truth d) facts – truth

130.My grandmother had a small ……………… as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.

a) outcome b) income c) money d) pounds

synonyms and antonyms

1. The verb "separate" is an antonym to the verb………

a) gather b) spread c) scratch d)wake

2. The adjective "tasty" is a to the adjective"….".

a) accepted b) horrible c) delicious d) strange

3-Dinner is about means dinner is…………………… .

a-vanished b- eaten c- taken d-ready

4.The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective"……….

a) useful b) strange c) available d) rare

5.So The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb".

a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

6.The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective..

a) distant b) connected c) joined d) planned

7. The verb "gather" is an antonym to the verb……

a) research b) get together c) confuse d) share

Grammar

ADJECTIVES الصفات

- الصفة عبارة عن كلمة تحدد معني الاسم و توضحه.

- Dalia is an intelligent girl.

- تأتى الصفة بعد بعض الأفعال مثل: *be - feel - smell - taste - sound - seem – look*

- Do you feel tired? - The dinner smells good.

- لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم to + inf. بعد بعض الصفات مثل

Difficult - easy –impossible – hard – happy – pleased – glad – sad – amazed – disappointed

- It's difficult to understand him. - I was sorry to hear that your father was ill.

- الصفـــة في اللغة الانجليزية لا تتغير حسب العدد أو الجنس

- He is a kind brother. - She is a kind sister.- They are kind brothers. - They are kind sisters.

- يمكن استخدام أسماء الخامات كصفات لكنها لا تستخدم للمقارنة أو التفضيل أو التساوي و لا تجمع

- a gold ring / an iron chair / silver coins

- بعض الأسماء يستخدم كصفة لبيان الغرض من الاسم الموصوف مثل

- a tea-spoon : a spoon for putting tea in a cup

- لاحظ استخدام صفات مثل (nice / kind / stupid / silly / clever / polite / careless) في التركيبة التالية

- It (be) + adj. + of + someone + to + inf. …………….. .

- It is kind of you to lend me the money. - It was careful of Ali to phone the police.

Comparative Adjective صفات المقارنة (بين اثنين)

♣الصفة في الدرجة الثانية تتكون من *(adjective + er + than / more (less) + adjective + than)*
(نضيف للصفة القصيرة er)
⏭ Ahmed is taller than Soha. ⏭ Soha is shorter than Ahmed
نستخدم (more) قبل الصفة المكونة من أكثر من مقطعين أو مقطعين مشتقين

⏭ The car is <u>more expensive than</u> the bike.
⏭ Zewail is more famous than any scientist.

لاحظ أن less) توضع أمام أي صفة سواء مكونة من مقطع أو أكثر (.

♠ He is less tall than me . ♠ 'she is less beautiful than her sister.

لاحظ أن الأهم في الدرجة الثانية هو إنها مقارنة بين اثنين

♠ Which is the easier language , German or French? ♠ Who is <u>the taller</u> of the twins?

♠ I didn't think the car was so expensive. ♠ The car was more expensive than I thought

♦لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يستخدم ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

♠He is taller than me/him/her. ♠But: He is taller than I am / he is/ she is.

♦لاحظ أن الصفة بعد and تأخذ نفس شكل الصفة قبلها

♠The weather is getting colder and colder ♠ He runs faster and faster

يمكن استخدام slightly / a bit / much /a lot / a little / far/ a few / many قبل الدرجة الثانية لتوضيح الفرق:

♠Going by plane is much more expensive. ♠You have to move a bit faster.
♠He is a little taller than his wife . ♠ Gold is much more expensive than silver
♠A few more people attended his conference than our conference.

في حاله التساوي نستخدم as.........as

♠Nada is as tall as Yumna. = Nada and Yumna are the same height.
♠Cairo is not so (as) cold as London . ♠ Cairo is hotter than London

♠ Modern machines work more efficiently than the old ones .(لاحظ ان مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات)
♠The rabbit runs more quickly than the tortoise. ♠He works harder than you .
♠If you get up early, you will arrive early = ♠ the earlier you get up , the earlier you arrive

لاحظ أن as + adjective صفة + as = the same + noun اسم + (as)

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
old	age	tall	height
deep	depth	high	height
expensive	price	heavy	weight
long	length	wealthy	wealth
wide	width	strong	strength

- Rania is the same age as Rasha. (as old as) - Rania is as old as Rasha.
- Samy is as tall as Ramy. (the same)
- Samy and Ramy are the same height. - Samy is the same height as Ramy.

عادة نستخدم ضمير مفعول عندما لا يوجد فعل و نستخدم ضمير فاعل عندما يوجد فعل بعد as / than -

- You are taller than me. = You are taller than I am.

- يمكن أن نحدد مقدار الصفة باستخدام a little / a bit / much / a lot / far (= a lot)

- Going by bus is a lot cheaper than going by plane. - Going by plane is much more expensive.
- Her illness was far more serious than we at first thought

- أحيانا نستخدم most بدون the قبل الصفة بمعنى very.

- The article I've just read was very interesting. (most)
- The article I've just read was most interesting.

- عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئا يعتمد على شيء آخر نستخدم

The + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل , the + صفة مقارنة + فاعل + فعل

- As you get older, you become wise. (The older)
- The older you get, the wiser you become.

- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في الشيء.

- It's becoming harder and harder to find a job. - It's becoming more and more difficult to find a job.
- The higher we go, the colder we feel. - The more you study, the more marks you get.
- The more you talk, the less you work.

- لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام بعد صفة التفضيل.

- This is the most interesting book I've ever read.

- بعد صيغة التفضيل نستخدم حرف الجر in مع الأماكن و نستخدم of مع الأشخاص و الأشياء
- Dalia is **the best student** in our class.
- Dalia is **the best of her friends**.
- Water is the least expensive of all liquids.

- لاحظ أننا نقول **the farthest ....from / the nearest ......to**
- Pluto is **the farthest planet** from the sun.- Mercury is **the nearest planet** to the sun.

٣-الصفة الدرجة الثالثة

♣الصفة الدرجة الثالثة تتكون من *(adjective + est / The most (least) + adjective)*

♠Soha is the tallest girl in the class. ♠He is the most intelligent boy in the school .
♠My grandfather is the oldest member in our family .
♠Diamond الماس is the most expensive metal ♠Amr is the tallest person in the family

♠I love my father best. ♣لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) لعدم وجود اسم بعد الصفة

♣لاحظ استخدام الدرجة الثالثة مع الكلمات **first / second / third,..etc**

♠Alexandria is the second largest city in Egypt. ♠He has got the third highest marks .

♣ لا تستخدم **the** قبل الدرجة الثالثة في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية قبل الصفة:

♠It was his biggest achievement in Chemistry. ♠ Nada is my best friend

♣الدرجة الثالثة تصبح درجة ثانية بوضع كلمة(**any**) قبل الطرف الثاني أو نبدأ بالطرف الثاني مسبوقا بـ(**No**)

♠French is the easiest subject. ♠ No subject is easier than French.
♠Sally is the cleverest girl I have ever seen ♠ I have never seen such a clever girl as Sally

♦ لاحظ استخدام (**of**)عندما يكون بعدها جمع ونستخدم (**in**)عندما يكون بعدها مفرد بعد صفة التفضيل

♠The longest river in the world ♠The Pacific is the biggest of all oceans
♠She is the most intelligent lady in the conference♠ Salah is the best player in Africa.

♣Irregular adjectives:صفات شاذة

الدرجة الأولي	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة	الدرجة الأولي	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة
good	better than	the best	well	better than	the best
bad / badly	worse than	the worst	ill	worse than	the worst
many	more than	the most	much	more than	the most
little	less than	the least	old	Elder	eldest
far	farther / further than	farthest / furthest			

♠My eldest sister got married . (لا تستخدم elder / eldest في المقارنة إنما في وصف أفراد الأسرة)
♠Alexandria is farther / further ابعد than Cairo .
♠I need further information معلومات إضافية about the salary

بعض الصفات تأخذ في المقارنة (er او more / est او most) مثل:

⏭ cruel (crueler / more cruel) ⏭ common شائع ⏭ lovely جميل ⏭ politeمؤدب

Choose the right anwers

1-Yesterday was hot and today is ....
a hotter b. hotter c. hotter than d. hottest

2-Planes are..................faster than trains.
a. a lot of b. more c. much d. as

3-The Egyptian museum is one of the........places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.
a. most popular b. least popular c. less popular d. more popular

4-Your homework is.........................than last week; you seem lazy!
a. bad b. good c. worse d. better

5-This exam seems........... than the previous one; you don't have to worry.
a. much difficult b. easier c. the easiest d. more difficult

6-Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really........... .
a. oldest b. youngest c. older d. younger

7-Which is............... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?
a. hotter b. hottest c. as hot d. hotter than

8-What is the......................mountain in Europe?
a. much high b. highly c. high d. highest

9-I love all my family, but I love my father..................of all.

a)more b) much c) the most d) most
11-Heba's wearing her ……………….dress today.
a) more new b) newer than c) the newest d) newest
12.Huda is…………fatter than her sister.
a) little b) less c) a bit d) more
13.For…………………information , contact the receptionist.
a) farther b) further c) furthest d) far
16.English is ………………to study than Chinese
a) easy b) more easier c) much easier d) less easier
17-I don't read as……………..books as you do
a-more b-much c-many d-most
18-It was……………of her to waste all her money.
a-more foolish b– less foolish c– foolish d– least foolish
19- He was not……………..as his colleagues.
a-helpful b– as helpful c– more helpful d– less helpful
20-The……………..fat you eat, the healthier you become.
a-less b-much c-least d-most
21-Although we aren't rich, my children go to……………..schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better
22-You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look…………today.
a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest
23 I think air pollution is……………… more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of
24. We aren't the same……… You're taller than me.
a) length b) age c) height d) amount
25.Basmala is the …………..of the two sisters.
a) young b) as young as c) youngest d) younger
26.The………………I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long
27-She is not…………………as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) beautiful than d) so beautiful
28.Mr Hassan doesn't earn………….. money as I do.
a the most b. more c. so much d. as many
29.He has much………………friends than me.
a. more b. the least c. most d. many
30-Of all the players, I like Mohammad Salah……………
a. better b. worst c. good d. best
31-Jana has a beautiful baby, but Judy has the…………. baby on earth.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) beautiful d) most beautifully
32. Maher isn't………………friendly as Hussein.
a) than b) so c) far d) much
33.Water is the………………expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.
a) most b) least c) less d) more
34.The shorter the queue is, the………………the service is.
a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast
35. Most other metals aren't………………..as gold.
a) precious b)the most Precious c) more precious d) as precious
36.A modern BMW is……………..expensive than this old Fiat.
a. much more b. much c. the most d. most
37-I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the……………..is an engineer.
a.later b. latter c. latest d.late
38-Tablets are becoming………………..popular nowadays.
a. more and more b. much and more c. more and less d. less and more
39-The more books she reads………………..ignorant she is.
a. the more b. the less c. the most d. the least
40-I come from a large family, but my grandfather had a……….one.

a) large b) the largest c) much large d)larger
41- Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked ……….
a)worse b) the worst c) well d)badly
42-I come from a large family, but my grandfather had a…………..one.
a) large b) the largest c) much large d) larger
43.The Pacific Ocean is the world's…………………..ocean.
a) deepest b) the deepest c)deep d) deeper
44.I can't hear you. Could you speak a little…………………., please?
a) loudly b) loudest c)loud d) louder
45.Travelling by train is………………………than travelling by bus.
a) expensive b) the most expensive c) more expensive d) much expensive
46.This tree is…………………than the building over there.
a) more taller b) a bit taller c) very tall d) the tallest
47..My sister thinks she's……………………than me, but I don't agree!
a) the most intelligent b) much intelligent c) intelligent d) more intelligent
48.My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something …………interesting.
a) much b) most c) less d) more
49.You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look………………today.
a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest
50. I think air pollution is…….more dangerous than sound pollution.
a) so b) a lot c) many d) a lot of
51.He is………………than all of his four brothers.
a) more taller b) the tallest c) the taller d) taller
52.I was not as intelligent as the others, but I was……..
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty
53.I am afraid his situation is going from bad to………
a) worse b) bad c) worst d) badly
54.China is…………..than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated c) populated d) as populated
55. Although we aren't rich, my children go to…………………schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better
56.A falcon has got a(good-better-best- bad)eyesight than a human.
57.Unfortunately her illness was……………we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious c) more serious than d) the most serious
58.It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere (more quiet -much quiet-quieter -most quiet)
59. We aren't the same height. You're(taller- higher- longer- bigger)than me.
60.Sanaa is the(young- as young as- youngest- younger)of the two sisters.
61-This is the (hard- harder – less hard- hardest) test I've ever taken.
62- He was not (helpful– as helpful– more helpful – less helpful) as his colleagues.
63-He is not (so – more – less – lessen) reliable as his friend.
64-My flat is (more big – less big – biggest – the biggest) than yours.
65-You didn't do as (more – less – least – much) work as I did.
66-Her friend is (wealthy – wealthiest – wealthier – wealthiest) than her.
67-My car is (less – more – least – most) small than yours.
68-Nobody here is (efficient – as efficient as – most efficient than – as efficient) Peter.
69-It was (more foolish – less foolish – foolish – least foolish) of her to waste all her money.
70-Mobiles are (as and more – more and so – much and more – more and more) popular
71-French is (many – most – much – more) easier than English.
72-A (few – few more – Less – little) students enrolled on our course than last year.
73.Your car is more expensive than mine. This means…………..
a. My car is cheaper than your. b. My car is as expensive as yours.
c. Your car is not cheaper than mine. d. My car is not as expensive as yours.
74.Ola is a better cook than Nada. This means…………..
a. Nada can't cook as good as Ola. b. Nada isn't a cook as good as Ola.
c. Nada can cook as badly as Ola. d. Nada can't cook as well as Ola.

Choose the best English translation:

1- يجب علينا ان نتعلم من ماضينا و نعمل بجد في حاضرنا لكي نحقق كل احلامنا في المستقبل.

1- We have to teach from our past and work hardly in our present time to achieve all our dream in the future.
2- We have to learn from our past and work hardly in our present time to achieve all our dream in the future.
3- We have to teach from the past and work hard in the present time to achieve all our dreams in the future.
4- We have to learn from our past and work hard in our present time to achieve all our dreams in the future.

2 العدالة من أهم القيم الأساسية الموجودة في النظم الإجتماعية في جميع الدول التي تحمي الحريات وحقوق الانسان.

a- Justice that protect freedom and human rights is one of the most fundamental values found in the social system of all countries.
b- Justice is the most fundamental value found in social system in all countries that protect freedoms and observe human rights.
c- Justice is one of the most fundamental value found in social system in all countries that protect freedom and observe human rights.
d- Justice is one of the most fundamental values found in social systems in all countries that protect freedom and observe human rights.

3-ينبغي أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم.

1.We should discourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
2.We should not encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
3.We should encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
4.We should encourage old people to practice sports to help them spend their free time

Choose the best Arabic translation:

1. Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast. Hence, we have to attract more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all tourist facilities available.

١.لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للعمله الصعبه للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال اليوم وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .
٢.لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه.
٣.لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل المشاريع الثقافيه المتاحه .
٤.لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تقع في البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب بعض من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .

2- Food for all is the major problem of the world today because a hungry world is never likely to be a peaceful one.

أ- إن توفير الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا بد أن يكون عالما يسوده السلام
ب- إن توفير الغذاء للجميع المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم، لأن العالم الجائع لا ينتظر أن يكون عالما يسوده السلام
جـ- إن غذاء الجميع هو المشكلة الثانوية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائعلن يكون عالما مسالما
د- إن الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا يحتمل أن يكون عالما لا يسوده السلام

3.The government tries to solve the problem of unemployment by providing the youth with job opportunities .

ا- تسعى الحكومة لزيادة مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب
ب- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشيوخ
ج- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة البطالة وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب
د- تسعى الحكومة للقضاء على مشكلة التوظيف وذلك بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب

Test on unit 2

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Egypt has (less – few – fewer – little) oil reserves than the USA.
2– Of all my friends I like Ahmad (better – best – the bette - good)
3– The harder you study , the (higher – highest – highly – so high) marks you get.
4– He left for home when he finished ………………..all his work.
a- to do b- do c- doing d- to doing
5– My wife is (a little – less – more – few) younger than me.

6- Our Prophet Mohammed(Pbuh) is (a – more – most – an) unique character
7– Many mountaineers (missed -lost –saved – got) their lives when they climbed Everest.
8-Who is the (older – oldest – old – as old as) boy , Ahmed or Amr?
9-Amount is the synonym of the word (quantity – quality – equality – quota)
10-How do you ………………. festivals in your country ?
a) celebrate b) deceive c) complete d) deserve
11- It is --------------------- for the bride to wear a white dress on the day of her wedding.
a) strange b) unusual c) traditional d) traditionally
12- Ramadan is a good (day – year – season – occasion) to be nearer to Allah
13- (Eat- Ate - Eating- Eaten) out costs a lot more money than eating at home
14- Do you think Cordellia (deserve – conserve – deceive – serve)her father punishment?
15- Children like eating ice cream because it is (sweet – spicy – salty – sour)
a) sweet b) spicy c) salty d) sour
16-I am not very good at (filling – doing- telling – giving) quizzes and questionnaires .
17. He is …………………of the couple .
a-tall b-taller c- tallest d- the tallest
18.He writes English better than ……………..
a- I b- me c- me do d- mine
19.This woman is exceptional, she's………, she's extraordinary and I have great respect for her.
a-private b- especially c- special d- specialist
20.He lies ………………………her about his work and age.
A-On b- to c- for d- by

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today, millions of people want to learn or improve their English but it is difficult to find the best method. Is it better to study in Britain or America or to study in your own country? The advantages of going to Britain seem obvious. Firstly, you will be able to listen to the language all the time you are in the country. You will be surrounded completely by the language wherever you go. Another advantage is that you have to speak the language if you are with other people. In Egypt, it is always possible, in the class, to speak Arabic if you want to and the learning is slower.

On the other hand, there are also advantages to staying at home to study. You don't have to make big changes to your life. As well as this, it is also a lot cheaper than going to Britain but it is never possible to achieve the results of living in the UK. If you have a good teacher in Egypt, I think you can learn in a more concentrated way than being in Britain without going to a school.

So, in conclusion, I think that if you have enough time and enough money, the best choice is to spend some time in the UK. This is simply not possible for most people, so being here in Egypt is the only viable option. The most important thing to do in this situation is to maximize your opportunities: to speak only English in class and to try to use English whenever possible outside the class.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- This text is mainly about how to ……………….
a) adapt to life in the UK b) travel easily from the UK to the USA
c) use English in real situations d) improve English whichever method you choose
2- According to the passage, going to Britain gives you an opportunity to …………………
a) be exposed to English all the time b) use English whenever possible in class
c) pay less money to acquire language
d) gain the American as well as the British accent
3- The underlined word "*viable*" means ……………..
a) difficult b) cheap c) applicable d) old-fashioned
4- According to the passage, staying in Egypt gives you the opportunity to ………..
a) earn more money through teaching a language
b) achieve the results of living in the UK

c) keep your lifestyle while learning English
d) make big changes to your life.
5- According to the passage, to spend some time in the UK you must ……………..
a) maximize your opportunities b) speak only English in class
c) have the strong will to do so d) be able to afford the expenses.
6- The writer of the passage thinks that it's still a good option to stay home as you…….. a) don't have to go to school b) can speak Arabic in class
c) can achieve the results of living in the UK d) can find a good teacher
7- Based on the passage, The advantages of going to Britain seem ……………..
a) confident b) diffident c) resident d) evident
8- Which of the following is true according to the passage?
a) Few people can spend some time in the UK.
b) Finding out how to learn English is easy.
c) English is a taboo in the Egyptian classes.
d) Your native language will surround you in Britain

4. Choose the best Arabic translation (3 marks)

1. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work wee together, is something we cannot do without. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

١-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى كل المشاريع.
٢-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقق اهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
٣-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
٤-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع

4. Choose the best English translation (3 marks)

١-يعكس تحسين اقتصادنا نتائج إيجابية على حياة المواطن المصري

1.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
2.Improving our economic reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
3.Improving our economy reflects negative results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
4.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the life's of the Egyptian citizen.

4. Write an essay of about 180 words on: (6 marks)

Team work leads to important achievements)





sustainable	طريقه	population	السكان	space	مساحه
imagine	يتخيل	contain	يحتوى على	burger	ساندوتش برجر
guest	ضيف	argue	يناقش	laboratory	معمل
island	جزيره	flow	تدفق	Researchers	الباحثون
rainfall	مطير	light	ضوء- خفيف	farming	الزراعه
furniture	اثاث	space	فضاء	remove	يزيل
persuade	يقنع	essay	مقال	sea level	مستوى سطح
encourage	يشجع	eficiently	بكفاءه	rise	يرتفع
tourism	السياحه	fact	حقيقه	describe	يصف
success	نجاح	Evidence	دليل	climate	مناخ
extraordinary	غير عادى	robot	انسان الى	mention	يذكر
sustainable	طريقه	immediately	فى الحال	farmland	ارض زراعيه
imagine	يتخيل	points	نقاط	face	يواجه
articles	مقالات	Urban farming	الزراعه	produce	ينتج - انتاج
sources	مصادر	Rural farming	الزراعه الريفيه	climate	تغير المناخ
sustainable	مستدام	case	حاله - قضيه	energy	طاقه
proposals	عروض -	conclude	يختم	save	يوفر
feed	يطعم	outdoor space	مكان مفتوح	electricity	كهرباء
Agriculture	الزراعه	indoor space	مكان مغلق	environment	البيئه
crop	محصول	research	يبحث	vegetarian	نباتى
earth	الارض	expression	تعبير	stuff	اشياء -
Innovation	الابداع	behave	يتصرف	seawater	مياه البحر
livestock	الماشيه	servant	خادم	petrol	بنزين
production	الانتاج	disguise	يتنكر	oil	بترول
variety	تنوع	exit	خروج	sheep	غنم
dry	جاف	honest	امين	goats	معيز
wet	مبلل	rude	وقح	equipment	معدات
create	يبتكر- يصنع	encouraging	مشجع	company	شركه
chemicals	كيماويات	cart	عربيه كارو	factory	مصنع
electric vehicles	مركبات	wise	حكيم	huge	ضخم
solutions	حلول	guilty	مذنب	population	السكان
damage	يتلف - تلف	Attendants	الحضور	invest	يستثمر
the United	الامم المتحده	attack	يهاجم	plan	يخطط
increase	يزداد	gap	فجوة	options	اختيارات
percent	%	sustainable	مصادر	rainforests	غابات مطيره
boring	ممل	feed	يطعم	prediction	تنبؤات
fashion	موضه	agriculture	الزراعه	arrangement	اعداد
tasty	لذيذ	giant whales	حيتان ضخمه	intention	نيه
summarise	يلخص	algae	طحالب	interview	مقابله شخصيه
words	كلمات	seaweed	اعشاب بحريه	capital	عاصمه
phrases	عبارات	popular	محبوب	education	تعليم
actions	احداث	healthy	صحى	run	يدير
helpful	مساعد	ocean	محيط	essay	مقال
insects	حشرات	improve	يحسن	eficiently	بكفاءه
soil	تربه	breathe	يتنفس	fact	حقيقه

hydroponics	الزراعه بدون	notice	يلاحظ	Evidence	دليل
Antarctica	القاره القطبيه	replace	يحل محل - يستبدل	robot	انسان الى
Experience	خبره	conclude	يختم	immediately	فى الحال
research	يبحث	outdoor space	مكان مفتوح	points	نقاط
expression	تعبير	indoor space	مكان مغلق	Urban	الزراعه
case	حاله - قضيه			Rural farming	الزراعه الريفيه

Definitions

Agriculture	The science or practice of farming	الزراعة
farming	The practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm	الزراعة
Crop	A plant that's grown in large quantities , especially as food	محصول
seaweed	A plant that grows in the sea	اشعاب بحريه
Innovation	The introduction of new things , ideas or ways of doing something	ابتكار / ابداع
Livestock	The animals kept on a farm , for examples cow and sheep	ماشية
Production	The process of growing or making food , goods or materials .	الانتاج
algae	Very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water	طحالب
Sustainable	Involving the use of natural products in a way that doesn't harm the environment	مستديم /مستمر
Variety	Several different things of the same thing	تنوع
Earth	The planet we live on	كوكب الأرض
Source	A place , a person or thing that you get something from .	مصدر
Rainforest	A thick forest in tropical parts of the world that have a lot of rain	غابة مطيرة
Hydroponics	The process of growing plants in water or sand rather than soil	الزراعة في الماء أو الرمال
Servant	A person working in another person's house and cooks and cleans	خادم
Disguise	To change your appearance so that people can't recognize you	يتنكر
Rude	Having or showing a lack of respect for other people and their feelings	وقح
Wise	Able to make sensible decision and give good advice	حكيم
variety	A lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in someway	تنوع
vegetarian	A person who doesn't eat meat or fish	شخص نباتي
Earth	The plant we live on	الارض

Expressions & Prepositions.

Increase by	يزيد بمقدار	Climate change	تغير المناخ
Increase in	زيادة في	Save energy	يوفر الطاقة
Instead of	بدلا من	Sustainable sources	مصادر مستدامة
Due to	بسبب	Focus on	يركز علي
Solution to	حل لـ	Lose up to	يفقد حتي
Deal with		Tell the difference	يميز
Expert on / in		Chemical weapons	أسلحة كيماوية
According to		Electric vehicles	سيارات كهربائية
Cut down		Negative effect on	تأثير سلبي علي
As a result		Positive effect on	تأثير ايجابي علي
Arguments for or	نقاش مع او ضد	Do research	يقوم بابحاث

against			
make sense	له معني	In disguise	متنكر
Fill in	يملىء ب	a taste of her own medicine.	يتجرع الدواء
Look at	ينظر الي	Sustainable farming	زراعه مستدامه
dry for agriculture	جاف للزراعه	involve +v.= ing	يشمل
kinds of	انواع من	cause (do) damage	
make a lot of oxygen	يصنع كثيرا من الاكسجين	in southern Africa	افريقيا الجنوبيه
In groups	في مجموعات	on the Earth	علي الارض
types of	انواع من		
What's wrong with it?	ما الخطأ فيه	Find out	يكتشف
A solution to	حل ل	Reasons for	اسباب ل
on traditional farms	مزارع تقليديه	good for	مفيد ل
focus on	يركز علي	on the farm	في المزرعه
available for	متاح ل	go up	يصعد
In my view	في رأي	It is thought	يعتقد

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
create	يبدع	creation	خلق - ابداع	creative	مبدع
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلي
produce	ينتج	Produce - Production	ينتج - انتاج	Productive	انتاجي
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	متنوع
sustain	يبقي	sustainability	الاستدامه	sustainable	مستدام
damage	يتلف	damage	تلف	Damaged - damaging	تالف
innovat	يبتكر	innovation	ابداع	innovative	ابداعي
interview	مقابله شخصيه	Interviewer- interviewee	محاور- ضيف		
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	قابل للحل
affect	يؤثر علي	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمه	Synonyms	Antonyms	المعني
extraordinary	استثنائي	exceptional - amazing	ordinary-	عادي - مألوف
available	متاح	reachable	unavailable	غير متاح
factual	حقيقي	Real - actual	Fictional - false	خيالي
increase	يزداد	raise	Decrease-reduce	يخفض
involve	يشمل	include	exclude	يستبعد
sustainable	مستدامة	continuous	unsustainable	غير مستدامة
original	اصلي	native	fake	مزيف
productive	منتج	fertile	barren / sterile	عقيم
destruction	دمار	Havoc / ruin	building	بناء
efficient	كفء	Hardworking / clever	Inefficient	غير كفء
behave	يتصرف	act / conduct	misbehave	يسيء التصرف

@@

Language Notes

1-The reason why + جملة السبب لماذا

-The reason why he came late was that he missed the bus.

&- The reason for + n. / V+ ing السبب لـ

- The reason for his absence was that he was ill.

&- reason for سبب لـ (يأتي بعدها التفسير)

-What is the reason for your cough ?
& - cause of سبب لـ (يأتي بعدها النتيجة)
What is the causes of pollution?

الجملة الأولى (النتيجة) Because / as / Since + الجملة الثانية (فاعل + فعل)

1- Ali was very unhappy because he didn't succeed.
2- As he was ill, he went to the doctor.
3- Since she was wise, she could solve the problem.

ولكن

الجملة الأولى → because of / due to/ owing to / for / on account of / thanks to / + Noun / v. ing

- He went to the doctor because of being ill.
- She could solve the problem due to her wisdom/ being wise.
- The film was very successful because of the amazing sound quality

---

3- agriculture علم الزراعة - cultivation / farming / growing plants الزراعة
- hydroponics الزراعة في الماء
- Do you think hydroponics is necessary ?

---

space فضاء - a space مكان - a space of time مدي زمني

4- outdoor خارجي -indoor داخلي (صفات)
- Football is an outdoor game - Basketball is an indoor game
- outdoors خارجيا - indoors داخليا ظروف
- I play football outdoors - I play basketball indoors

5- source مصدر – منبع (sources of the Nile) &(resource مورد / natural resources)

6-Artificial

من صنع أو إنتاج البشر بدلاً من حدوثه بشكل طبيعي ، خاصةً كنسخة من شيء طبيعي

artificial lake بحيرة صناعية artificial limbs أطراف صناعية artificial milk لبن صناعي

- Synthetic

مصنوعة عن طريق التكوين الكيميائي ، لتقليد منتج طبيعي .

synthetic gas غاز صناعي synthetic fibres ألياف صناعية false teeth أسنان صناعية

7- a chemical مادة كيميائية
- Food which is grown using chemicals may be bad for you.
- Chemical كيماوي
- Chemical weapons are mass-destructive weapons. أسلحة دمار شامل

8-Innovation ابتكار – تجديد
- We live in the age of technological innovation.
-Invention اختراع
I think that the internet is the most important invention .

9- livestock (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع) (ماشية) - cattle (تأخذ فعل جمع فقط) (ماشية)

10- result from ينتج عن -result of نتيجة لـ - result in يؤدي إلي

11- (do / cause damage يسبب تلف) - damages(compensation) تعويضات

(مستر هشام) تعريفات القصة

behave	To do things in a particular way (act)
servant	A person working in another person's house and cooks and cleans
disguise	To change your appearance so that people can't recognize you
rude	Having or showing a lack of respect for other people and their feelings
encourage	To give somebody support , courage or hope
wise	Able to make sensible decision and give good advice
a cart	A vehicle with two or four wheels pulled by a horse .

@@

LISTENING TEXT

The population problem in Egypt

The population of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions to these problems?

One plan is to invest billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

The rainforest in Borneo:

Interviewer: Hello everyone. In today's show I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : *It's great to be with you, John.*

Interviewer: Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : *A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.*

Interviewer: And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : *Well, Borneo is a large island in South East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.*

Interviewer: Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, *some farmers are cutting down tress and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see.*

So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

Interviewer: Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : *Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organization will be running an education programme next month to help them.*

Interviewer: *Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.*

How to write a summary:

Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?
Hany : *Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.*
Amir : I can see that. It's very long.
Hany : *So what?*
Amir : *Well, we were asked to write a summary, and yours looks longer than the text we're summarizing! You know it should be shorter, right?*
Hany : *Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.*
Amir : So, what was the text about?
Hany : *I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.*
Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can.

Reading

The future of farming

1. New solutions for our growing world

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food.
How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

2. Changes in agriculture that can save the land

Researchers from the United Nations (UN) have found that some kinds of agriculture are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is

too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas.
Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central America country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism than from cutting down trees. It was a great success, but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the numbers of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary place in the future.
Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?
Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.
Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean.
In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe because algae makes a lot of oxygen.
But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics.

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in area with poor soil. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects. Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica or even space.

Urban Farming

This essay will focus on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs, gardens and open spaces to grow what they can. In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces. In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor space.

Exercises on unit : 3 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should increase our food ……………due to the rapid population growth.
a. assumption b. introduction c. production d. consumption
2. We should encourage ……..to be able to increase our agricultural production to face hunger.
a. innovations b. motivations c. irrigation d. cultivation
3. Scientists should look for more ……………. solutions to the problem of crowdedness.
a. curable b. removable c. sustainable d. available
4. There is a…………of wonderful goods in this shop. You can choose the clothes you need.
a. rarity b. gathering c. group d. variety
5. Tourism is a great ……………. of national income in Egypt.
a. origin b. source c. means d. store
6. Farmers shouldn't use chemicals to help ……………. grow faster.
a. crops b. foodstuffs c. goods d. products
7. The thief has ………… himself in awoman's clothes so that no one could recognize him.
a. guessed b. disguised c. hurried d. disappeared
8. Algae grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called ……….. .
a. seashell b. sea life c. seaweed d.seabed

9. Our deserts have a low.......density , so we should build new cities there to encourage our youth to live there.
a) devastation b) invention c)pollution d) population
10.The famine was caused by drought, which led to widespread .... failure.
a) discovery b) drop c) crop d) exploration
11. The government hopes to achieve........economic growth.
a) sustainable b) avoidable c) unreliable d) unavailable
12.The doctor encouraged him to increase the .... of food that he eats..
a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety
13. The storm has caused great................to the houses. Some of them collapsed
a) help b) profit c) damage d) interest
14. More........cars were sold in the world than last year.
a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) vague
15. The government is making great efforts to encourage.............in industry.
a) excitement b) loss c) redundancy d) innovation
16. Due to drought , there won't be much land available for food..............in the future.
a) affection b) intention c) production d) inspection
17.Some greedy farmers use special......to make the crops grow faster.
a) chemicals b) paints c) ingredients d) components
18................. does not only mean growing animals, but it includes keep animals as well
a Farming b. Agriculture c. Hydroponics d. Production
19.To be a........at work, you should exert great efforts
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully
20. The increase in fuel costs has a bad .... on fields of life.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection
21.A dentist could put in a temporary filling, but that's not the perfect ....
a) solution b) cause c) design d) plot
22.When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats are totally.............
a) constructed b) placed c) designed d) destroyed
23.We have tried to create a working .... in which everyone can develop their skills.
a) environment b) employment c) treatment d) payment
24. The test will.....answering questions about a photograph.
a) consist b) examine c) involve d) result
25.The Coronavirus pandemic had a/an.........influence on trade.
a) positive b) negative c) impressive d) oppressive
26. I can't really .... the difference between these two colours.
a) report b) invent c) tell d) accept
27. --------------- means food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm .
a) Products b)Production c)Producing d)Produce
28. Farmers work longer hours during the …………………………..
a-crop b- harvest c- yield d- produce
29.Unfortunately, as time passed, things.......worse in the shop until it was closed.
a) made b) got c) done d) devised
30.We should encourage youth to work for……………to help the poor.
a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station
31.The computer programmes help scientists to .... colourful graphs.
a) spend b) end c) waste d) create
32.The government must take action to reduce the...................of pollution.
a) reasons b) studies c) effects d) inventions
33.The batteries of the new mobile I bought can store……………..for one or two days.
a) gas b) atom c) chemical d) energy
34..................... have found links between stress and heart disease
a) Researchers b) Farmers c) Helpers d) Officers

35. Football is an outdoor game but basketball is played ---------------------
a) indoor b) outdoor c) indoors d) outdoors
36- He ------------------- from their remarks that they were not in favour of the plan.
a) included b) concluded c) conclusion d) induce
37. There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a...........floods happened in Egypt.
a) reason b) result c) purpose d) cause
38.Scientists warn us that cutting------rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
a) in b) at c) for d) down
39. The pharaohs'………………was full of great engineering works like the pyramids.
a) reign b) area c) decade d) century
40. All computer manuals should .... a list giving addresses of suppliers.
a) contain c) consist b) include d) enclose
41-This pizza is really .... - Who cooked it?.
a. taste b. tasteful c. tastefullness d. tasty
42. A lot of employees have ....their jobs because of corona crisis..
a) missed b)gained c) increased d)lost
43.With the new players, Zamalik will be a tough team to.........
a) win b) beat c)earn d) gain
44. The manager encourages all...........and creative ideas for products.
a) fresh b) vague c) traditional d) customary
45. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the .... space..
a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable
46. We should give businessmen the...........to invest in Egypt.
a) journey b) chance c) study d) subject
47.The police came to the...........that the criminal was not telling the truth.
a) study b) conclusion c) attention d) experience
48. There was no visible .... that humans had ever lived in this valley.
a) study b) experience c) evidence d) conclusion
49.The car gains its ………………… gradually.
a) heat b) speed c) energy d) descend
50.The Suez Canal provides a............between the Red Sea and the Mediternean Sea.
a) method b) link c) space d) travel
51. Nowadays emails have largely.....the traditional letters.
a) replaced b) placed c) renewed d) destroyed
52. Scientists are trying to......what the weather will look like in 20 years' time.
a) protect b) prohibit c) predict d) remove
53. Most of the people in Egypt work in.....and fishing.
a) economy b) agriculture c)literature d) culture
54. Traditional agricultural methods employed by the local people are highly ....
a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable
55. The company where I work sells a........of computer products.
a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation
56. The government should punish any factory that throws......waste in the river.
a) chemical b) useful c) plentiful d) valuable
57.Zamalik club is.......in popularity in Egypt thanks to Fereira and Shikabala.
a) planting b) making c) growing d) revealing
58.A/An.........is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
a) vegetarian b) inspector c) sociologist d) architect
59.My father.........all his savings in a project making furniture.
a) inspired b) invested c) moved d) respected
60 Children's television programmes are aimed at a/an..........age group.
a) public b) private c) specific d) accepted
61. Students at universities make notes of the...........points they need.

a) main b) mean c) meant d) moan

62.You must rewrite this sentence as it doesn't......any sense to me.

a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

62.In my......... new ways of farming are very important for us.

a) view b) sight c)scene d) scenery

63. At the end of the news programme, they often give you a............of the main stories

a) summary b) research c) theory d) document

64.Mohammed Salah has been the main ....of conversation about Liverpool.

a) clause b) reason c) object d) topic

65.The fox ran back to its ………………..not to be attacked by people.

a-earth b- ground c- dent d- shelter

66. The firefighters............the fire in the building after three hours.

a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included

67.The news of the promotion had a/an......... effect on the employees who were promoted.

a) electronic b) electric c) shocking d) exclusive

68.These days, poor people find it very difficult to.........their needs.

a) win b) award c) apply d) earn

69.I accepted the job after I read its job..........and found it suitable for me.

a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division

70.Competition between the two companiesto win the project is.................up.

a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating

71.This year, we had a …………………….. of cotton. It will be exported.

a-harvest b- production c- manufacture d- crop

72. The Nile is the…………….of life in Egupt and Sudan..

a-source b-resource c-sourceful d- resourceful

73.Some people prefer the traditional approach and resist ……………….

a-innovation b- renew c- insolation d- devolve

74…………..is the work, business, or study of farming

a-farming b- horticulture c- floriculture d-agriculture

75. …………..is a plant grown for food, usually on a farm

a-Crop b- Harvest c- Reap d- Commodity

76………………is the invention or use of a new idea, method, piece of equipment

a- Innovation b- Discovery c- Excavation d- Activation

77. ……………is the process of making or growing things in large quantities, especially in a factory or on a farm, so that they can be sold

a-Produce b- Fabricate c- Production d- Innovation

78.According to the United Nations, there will be ………. 10 billion people in the world by 2050.

a-most b- mostly c- almost d- a mostly

79. Arab traders took Islam to Afirca in ………. the third century, possibly even earlier.

a-about b-most c- near d- approximate

80.The President pleads for agricultural …………………….. and self-sufficiency.

a-production b- productive c- produce d- reproduction

81.The government took the initiative to send seed and …………. to these farms.

a-life stock b- in stock c-livestock d- Stackhouse

82.We've got to deal with the environment, get a ....development running in this country.

a-sustain b- sustainable c-sustainability d- unsustainable

83. Can you …………………… the difference between produce and production?

a-say b- mention c- tell d- imply

84.Most of the damage is due to farmers ………………. too many chemicals

a-to use b-use c- using d- reuse

85. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food .....

a-production b- productive c- produce d- reproduction

86.Population growth in this country is exploding, …………. legal and illegal immigration,

a-thanks b-due c- because d- due to
87.Smoking has a bad effect ………………….. health.
a-for b- on c- in d- by
88.We should find easy solutions …….. our problems.
a-for b- on c- about d- to
89.He neither answered them …………………. looked at them.
a-nor b- or c- and d- for
90.Around 30% of Egyptians work in farming and ………………………..
a-culture b-agriculture c- floriculture d- harvesting
91.It is not………………………to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no more oil.
a-sustainable b-sustaining c- unsustainable d- resuscitation
92.My uncle keeps………………………on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
a-life stock b- livestock c- living stock d- home stock
93.The weather has been very good for the cotton…………………..this year.
a-harvest b- crop c- produce d- outcome
94.Food………………went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
a-production b- produce c- yield d- outcome
95.Technological………..means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
a-activation b-innovation c- invent d- discovery
96.The…………………………of crops grown on that farm is huge.
a-various b- variety c- variables d- variable
97-Cotton was an important (career – carrot – crop – corpse) in Egypt .
98- The government should put a clear ------------------- policy to help improve agriculture .
a) cultural b) intellectual c) agricultural d) cultivate
99-Farmers are extremely busy during the season of (crops – harvest – hardest – dryness). They help each other.
100- Farmers should give due care to their ---------------- such as cows , sheep and birds.
a) cutlery b) kettle c) donkeys d) livestock
101-Lack of water has affected badly on rice --------------------- in Egypt .
a) production b) introduction c) producer d) productive
102- Tourism and the Suez Canal are the most important---------------- of our national income.
a) sources b) sorts c) original d) sauce
103-Poor families spend about 80 to 90 ----------------- of their income on food
a)per b) hundred c) cent d) per cent
104- The increase in -------------------- hinders our progress and our development.
a) agriculture b) population c) industry d) innovation
105- It is easy for the wise leader to find immediate ------------------ to his people's problems.
a) solutions b) solve c) salutation d) sanitation
106- Can you tell me about a project in which I can ---------------- my money?
a) waste b) lose c) invest d) investment
107- Trees help the (earth – ground – floor – furniture) to breathe
108- The expansion of building on the agricultural land will push us to depend on--------------
a) statistics b) economics c) hydroponics d) hibernation
109- The weather is (wet – dry – drought – dryness) today . I will take my umbrella .
110-To save petrol , most of the world countries have begun to use --------------- vehicles.
a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic
111- The salary will be fixed according (in – of – to – too) qualifications and experience.
112- I can solve this problem in --------------------- of a couple of hours .
a) timing b) space c) only d) about
113- His failure is a direct -------------------- his carelessness
a) result b) result from c) result in d) result of
114- The Uniited Nations ………… has an office in most countries of the world.
a) foundation b) unity c) organization d) group

115- Your low income is due (to – of – from – on) your laziness .
116- The earthquake has ------------------- a lot of damage to the houses in the area
a) done b) made c) given d) brought
117-Any investment --------------------- an element of risk-
a) revolves b) involves c) solves d) resolves
118- This liquid can ----------------- any spot of oil from your clothes .It is effective in washing.
a) pollute b) stain c) remove d) move
119- Do you think --------------------- change has affected our yields of agriculture ?
a) climate b) weather c) air d) soil
120-How far is Mount Everest above sea (standard – devil - level – lava)?
121-I want to know the real reason (of – for – about – with) your negligence .اهمال
123-Cutting down -------------------- has affected our climate negatively .
a) grass b) plants c) rainforests d) weeds
124- Enironmentalists want the governments to punish those who ---------------- rainforests.
a) protect b) conserve c) reserve d) destroy
125-What are the causes (of – for – with – at) the fires occurring in the rainforests?
126- People believe that we will depend on ------------ as a new source of food from the sea .
a) rice b) wheat c) algae d) meat
127-My father lives in his fourth (century – decade - millennium – year)He is still young.
128-The teacher has focused (in – at – on – of) some important points in his explanation.
129- I have written a long (essay – story – book- brochure) about pollution for homework.
130-Do you think learning online can ----------------- learning in schools?
a) place b) displace c) replace d) replacement.
131-Asia is the biggest (country – state – nation – continent) in the world
132-The police are looking for any ---------------- to solve the mystrery of the crime.
a) evidence b) evident c) victim c) innocent
133 -Some people cut (of – up – down – off) forests to use its wood to make furniture.
134 -Before building the High Dam ,our (earth – ground – soil – floor) was fertile .
135 - Because of lack of silt , our soil needs a contionous supply of --------------- fertilizers.
a) chemical b) chemistry c) chemicals d) chemist
136- Can we depend on hydroponics instead --------------- the traditional way of farming.
a) off b) on c) of d) for
137- The essay contains a number of ----------------------- reasons.
a) fact b) reality c) actually d) factual
138- I hate ------------------ especially flies and mosquitoes .
a) animals b) insects c) birds d) livestock
139- I think -------------- life is better than rural life as you can enjoy all facilities there.
a) urban b) farm c) village d) countryside
140- ------------------- is the practice or science of farming.
a) Agriculture b)Tourism c)Terrorism d)Industry.
141- -------------- a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water.
a) Rice b)Wheat c)Cotton d)Algae
142-A ------------ a plant such as wheat , rice , or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.
a) crop b) corpse c) carrot d) keetle
143------------------ is the process of growing plants in water or sand , rather than , in water.
a) Hydroelectricity b) Hydroponics c)Farming d)Agriculture
144---------------- means the introduction of new ideas or methods .
a) Introduction b)Intonation c)Innovation d) Education
145-Someone who doesn't eat meat or fish is called a (vet – vegetarian – vegetation – valve)
146- --------------- means a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other.
a)Variety b) Anxiety c) Reliability d) Activity
147. -------------- means to continue for a long time and to be friendly to the environment.
a) Attainable b)Sustainable c)Affordable d) Liable

148-He runs a school .This means he (races – walks – speeds – manages) a school.
150-King Lear was not ------------------ enough to divide his kingdom between his daughters
a) unwise b) wisedom c) foolish d) wise.
151- The ------------ of the king should be honest , loyal and faithful to continue in their service
a) servants b) queens c) sons d) daughters
152-The king was in ------------------- in the market to find out if the traders were honets or not.
a) his clothes b) disguise c) distract d) discourage
153-He was found ------------------- so he was sent to prison .
a) guilty b) innocent c) honest d) loyal
154-He is a decent person who ------------ well .
a) behaves b) spoils c) deceives d) cheats
155-Don't be so (polite – faithful – nice – rude) to anyone .
156-Being (rude – impolite – wise – liar) is a good quality.
157-His bad behaviour drives me (mad – made – a cart – a cargo)

synonyms and antonyms

1- The word "ignore" can be the opposite to the word.....
a) apply b) neglect c)mention d) invent
2- The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun.......
a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose
3-The antonym of the word tiny is (small – hug – huge – minute)
4- The word "amazing" is similar in meaning to the verb......
a) terrible b) extraordinary c) common d) average
5-The verb "proceed" can be the opposite to the verb.....
a) neglect b) avoid c) cease d) continue
6. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word"....
a) fictional b) factual c) imaginary d) advised
7-This painting is not original .Here orginal is the antonym of -------------------
a) fake b) first c) native d) lovely

&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&

Grammar

FUTURE FORMS AND TENSES أشكال و أزمنة المستقبل

1) WILL + INF.

١- تستخدم (Will) للتنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل

- I expect she **will get a good job** soon.
- I think it **will rain** tomorrow..
- I expect Egypt **will achieve** progress in all fields..
- I think Ali **will buy** the computer.

٢- تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية

- This school **will be 50 years** old next year
- I am 18. Next year, I **will be** 19 years old.

٣ - كما تستخدم لاتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما

- Someone's at the door .**I'll see** who it is
- -I'm hungry. I think I **will have** a sandwich..
-That's the phone. I **will answer** it.

لاحظ ايضا ان اتخاذ القرارات السرسه تأخذ مستقبل بسيط وليس (going to)

-I have decided now that I (will-~~am going to~~)travel to Cairo

٤- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما

- **I'll wash** the dishes
- **I'll fix** the car for you.

٥ - عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء

- **Will you help** me carry this bag, please?
- **I hope you will look** after the baby.

٦ - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق

- **I will meet** my friends this evening.

٧ - عمل الوعود والتهديدات

- I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.
- You won't get your prize if you come late.

8- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط.

يستخدم بعد الروابط الاتية :

After/ As soon as/ When / Before /once By the time	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام)	مستقبل+ Will+ inf
+ will (won't) + فاعل مصدر / don't مصدر	Till/until	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام)

I won't be able to write the report until I've done the research.

Once I've done the research, I'll start the report.

-Normal people won't travel in space until it has become less expensive.

-People won't buy electric cars until they have discovered a way for them to go longer distances without being charged.

- When I've fixed my computer, I'll help you with your research.
- As soon as/When Ali gets home, he will have dinner

-He won't leave until his sister arrives/has arrived

-Don't press this button until the light turns green.

9-توزيع الوظائف و المهام والادوار (بين المتحدث وافراد اخرين

* You sweep the floor and I will cook the dinner.
* You do the typing and I will check it later.

---

٥. الكلمات الدالة

-نستخدم will بعد الافعال والظروف والتعبيرات الاتية :

افعال	predict-expect -hope- think – believe – promise – wonder - suppose
ظروف	Probably-possibly- certainly- perhaps – maybe -
تعبيرات	Be sure –be afraid –it is probable –it's certain –it's possible- I don't think
كلمات	tomorrow - next (week/month/year) – in the future - soon - in 2030 -

---

2) FUTURE CONTINUOUS المستقبل المستمر

Form : *will be + v.ing*

- This time next week, I will be travelling to Cairo.
- Don't ring at 8 o'clock. *I'll be having* dinner with my family.
- You'll recognize me when you get there. I'll be wearing jeans and a white t-shirt.

I'll be sitting at a table at the corner and reading a newspaper.

١- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتنبؤ بحدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت ما أو خلال فترة محددة في المستقبل

- I'll be playing tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- The government will be trying to reduce the effects of climate change.

٢- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)

- I will be waiting for you when your bus arrives.

- **I'll be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you *need* to contact me.
- **He will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Ola when she *arrives*.

٣- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازي)

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **will be dancing**.

I **will be working** hard next week while you **will be relaxing** on the beach.

٤- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن

- Don't call him now, **he'll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'**ll be cleaning** their house at the moment.

٥- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالـــــــة (افعال الحواس والادراك والفهم -----).

- Maher **will be** at my house when **you arrive**. (Not: ~~will be being~~)
- **After I study**, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

MAY BE + V.ING

- يستخدم (**may be v.ing**) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملـــة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبـــل

- I can't visit you because I **will / may be doing** my homework this evening.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

---

3) THE FUTURE PERFECT المستقبل التام

١- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهي أو تم قبـــــــل وقت معين في المستقبل

- By the end of next year, the government **will have built** a new school in the village.
- The population of the world **will have grown** to about nine billion to by 2050?
- They **will have finished** the English course in two months' time.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهي أو تم قبـــــــل حدث آخر في المستقبل

- Before they come, we **will have cleaned** up the house.
- John **will have eaten** the whole cake, by the time the birthday party starts

٣- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.......) time
- By next Monday / by 2025 حينئذ .... etc.)
- Before (four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)
- By next Wednesday, I **will have done** a science test.
- **By the time** I am twenty-two, I **will have finished** my university degree.

٤- يتكون المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول من (**will have been + pp**)

- This school **will have been built** by 2030.

---

4) BE + GOING TO + INF.

١- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن أحداث تم اتخاذ قرار بشأنها من قبل.

- A: What are your plans for the next weekend? - B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

٢- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليـــــل. نراة او نعرفة او نسمعه مع كلمات believe/ /think

- The other team's players are very big. It's going to be a difficult match.
- I think it's going to rain because the sky seems very cloudy.
-There are a lot of clouds. I think It is going to rain.
-Look at this reckless driver! He is going to crash into the car in front.
-Hassan's playing really well. He's going to win the game!
-It's near the end and it's 3-0 for Egypt. We are going to win the game!.
-It's six a.m. and it's already 25°C. It is going to be very hot today

او شى على وشك الحدوث او مع كلمات التحذير او التنبيه :/ take care /look!/ watch out ! /lookout!

- Watch out!

- Watch out! The baby is going to fall.
-How pale شاحبة الوجه that girl is! I believe / I think/ she is going to faint
-He can't swim. He is going to drown.

ولكن الصفات الثابتة والمهارات للانسان ليس دليلا على حدوث الفعل فناخذ Will

E.g.1- Messi is a clever player. I think he will score a goal the next match.
2- Hamdi is very fast. I think he will be in the Olympic Games one day!
3- Sara is a good student .I think she will pass all her exams.

ولكن لاحظ المواقف المؤقتة تعتبر ادلة واضحة

* My brother is revising well. I think he's going to pass the test.

3-يستخدم عند وجود كلمات (made up…mind intend /intention/plan /decide/ made decision/)

Ex- A: What are your plans for the next weekend?
- B: I'm going to play computer games.

---

5) THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS المضارع المستمر

(am / is / are + v.ing)

١ -يستخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، و يدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل:

arranged /made arrangements / prepared / booked /packed reserved / got / bought

e.g. - He has arranged everything. He's spending his holiday in Paris.
They are flying to Paris next Friday. They bought the tickets

---

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر

- He's getting married next Friday.

2-يتسخدم مع المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد والزواج وسفر وزيارات ومواعيد شخصية وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات

e.g. He's getting married next Friday. We are giving a party tomorrow for Ali's birthday.
The school inspector is coming on Thursday.

3- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع هذة الافعال التى تستلزم ترتيبات

a party يقيم leave/(have/give) /go /come/ visit=see /meet/ travel /see/ stay/fly /arrive)

- I'm meeting them on Saturday. - They're going tomorrow.
I'm doing a test next Monday. Our class is visiting a museum tomorrow
-We're eating dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening

---

6) THE PRESENT SIMPLE المضارع البسيط

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بجداول مواعيد ثابتة : وسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما و المدرسة ......الخ

- The train leaves at six o'clock tomorrow.
- The night programme of the cinema starts at 12 am.

$$

Mr El Sebaei Exercises on Grammar تمارين الوحدة الثالثة Mr El Sebaei

1-It's arranged. We (will go – go – are going – may go) to the Red Sea this summer.

2-I think my cousin (will study – studies – going to study – would study) engineering.

3-(Are you playing – Do you play – Shall you play – Do you go to play) tennis after school today?

4-My German lesson (is stating – starts – has been starting – start) at four o'clock this afternoon.

5-The launch of the satellite (is being – are being – is – was) at 7.50 tomorrow.

6-We (will – may – are going to – are) probably be there for two weeks.

7-I can't talk at the moment. I (do – will do – am doing – have done) my homework.

8-I can't meet you this afternoon. I (am doing – do – have done – may do) the shopping.

9-Hello, Ahmed. I (go – am going – have gone – would have gone) to the airport in a minute.

10-My plane (is leaving – shall leave – leave – leaves) at 10 o'clock tomorrow.

11-I am studying medicine. I (may be – am going to be – am being – be) a doctor.

12-She (will – should – is going to – may) probably do the shopping tomorrow.

13-I expect that he (wins – will win – is going to win – is winning) the match.

14-Perhaps they (are visiting – are going to visit – will visit – may) visit us next Saturday.

15-Somebody is knocking on the door. I (am going – will go – have gone – go) and open it.

16-She (is flying – flies – fly – would fly) to Spain next Monday. Everything is arranged.

17- I (am going to play – play –will play – should play) tennis with a friend. That's my plan.

18-He drives at breakneck speed. He (has – will have – is going to have – is having) an accident.

19-Watch out! You (are dropping – drop – are going to drop – would drop) the glasses.

20-(Will you – Are you going to – Do you – Should you) help me with this heavy bag, please?

21-Don't worry. I (lend – am lending – will lend – should lend) you the money you need.

22-I (am going to be – will be – am being – be) 25 next Monday.

23-I can't see you tomorrow. I (am meeting – meet – am going to meet – will meet)my cousin.

24-Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. tomorrow. I..................... the kids to school then.

a) drive b) will be driving c) have driven d) would drive

25-Look at those black clouds. It (rains – is raining – is going to rain – isn't raining).

26-She (will – should – might – ought) probably be a great success.

27-She has decided that she (is studying – is going to study – was studying – will be studying)

28-Be careful! You (will spill – are spilling - are going to spill – spill) your coffee.

29-That's the phone. I (answer – am answering – would answer – will answer) it.

30- By ten o'clock tonight, I (finish – am finishing – will finish -'ll have finished) all my homework.

31.We can't use classroom 5 tomorrow as they(will paint- will have painted-are painting-paint) the walls

32-It is very hot in the house. I (am turning --turn- will turn - am going to turn) on the air conditioner!

33-A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It(will be- is-was- is being) busy today

34.Your bags look heavy. I (will help-am helping-help-will be helping) you to carry them.

35.The teacher says that we (study-are studying-are going to study) relative clauses next week.

36.My grandfather(is being- will be-is going to- wil have been) 70 on his next birthday!

37. I'll call you when I (arrive- arrives- will arrive-am arriving) at my hotel.

38- The bridge (will be built- will have been built- will build) across the river by next January.

39- When you get off the train, I (are waiting- will have waited- will be waiting) for you by the ticket machine.

40- By 2030, scientists will (have invented-invent-be inventing) glasses on which we watch videos.

41- In 2030. we will (wear-be wearing-be worn- have worn) the same clothes.

42- Don't come round at six o'clock. I will still (do- doing-have done-e doing) my homework.

43- I'm sure you(spend-will spend-are spending-will have dpent) a lovely time in Italy next year.

45- My sister is pregnant. She (is going to have- will have had- will have- will be having)a baby.

46-Don't be late , the bus .... At exactly ten o'clock.

a- Leaves b- going to leave c- has left d- left

47- It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It .... very hot today.

a was b is going to be c is being d will be

48- They ....a party next week. Everything is arranged.

a. have b. are having c. are going to have d. have had

49-Our last lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a-is finishing b-will finish c-finishes d-going to finish

50- There are a lot of people in the room. It................. difficult to find a chair.

a-is b-will be c-is going to be d- will have been

51-Look, there's a sandstorm. I .... the windows.

a-will close b-close c-am gong to close d-am closing

52-There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it................... very hot.

a- is going to be b- will be c- is being d- is

53- I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I.......... be sick.

a should b am going to c am to d. will

54- We .... married next month. Would you like to come to the wedding?

a-will have got b-are getting c-will get d-got

55- I think it .... be hot tomorrow.

a is b is going to c will be d going to

56- He ....work in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.

a. is leaving b. is going to leave c. will leave d. leaves

57. The film .... at 7.30 this evening.

a- starts b- will start c- started d- is starting

58- She.............an engineer when she leaves university. That is her plan,

a- will become b- has become c- is going to become d- becomes

59- Someone's at the door. I........................who it is

a- am seeing b- will see c- am going to see d- see
60. There's a book club meeting after school and everyone...........there.
a) is going to go b) will go c) are going to go d) goes
61. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it ....in thirty minutes.
a) is leaving b) will be leaving c) leaves d) will leave
62. We.................a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a) will have b) going to have c) are having d) have
63-Take your umbrella with you or you .... wet.
a) get b) will get c) are getting d) would get
64. He hasn't studied hard. I think he....................this exam.
a- will fail b- fails c- is going to fail d- failed
65. I expect Ahmed ....through his exams.
a- is getting b- is going to get c- will get d- would get
66. Go and see that film. I'm sure that you..................it.
a- will enjoy b- are enjoying c- are going to enjoy d- enjoy
67. Look out! The rock is loose. It...............on your head.
a- is going to fall b- will fall c- is falling d- falls
68. I think it .... rain because the sky is really dark.
a) is going to rain b) is raining c) rains d) will rain
69. The earth is very crowded. People...........on the moon.
a. are living b. will live c. live d. are going to live
70. Watch out! The baby ....
a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. will be fallen
71- I'm sure the match................really exciting.
a. will be b. is being c. is going to be d. would be
72- I've have decided that I ....part in the next competition.
a. going to take b. will take c. am taking d. take
73.Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she.................. the baby by the time we get to the hospital.
a) will have b) will have had c) will be having d) is having
74.The mechanic ....repairing your car by the end of the week.
a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) is finishing
75.We .... studying this book by the end of this year.
a) finish b) will be finishing c) will have finished d) are finishing
76.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we............ tennis.
a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
77.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we............ tennis.
a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
78.I predict that in the future mobile phones.................... much smaller.
a) were b) are going to be c) are d) will be
79.I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week I.................... on a beach.
a) am going to lie b) am lying c) will lie d) will be lying
80.At one o'clock tomorrow, I.................... lunch with my friends.
a) was eating b) eating c) will be eating d) ate
81.By ten o'clock tonight, I...................... all my homework.
a) will do b) will have done c) do d) will be doing
82.Let's eat dinner when John.................. here.
a) gets b) will get c) will have get d) get
83.Experts think that Cairo .... by more than half a million people next year.
a) will grow b) will have grown c) will be growing d) grows
84.I'm going to the airport in a minute. My plane .... at ten o'clock.
a) leave b) is leaving c) leaves d) will leave
85.Wake me up by nine o'clock - I.................... long enough by then.
a) will sleep b) have slept c) will be sleeping d) will have slept
86.Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I...................that way anyway.

a) won't drive b) will have driven c) drives d) will be driving

87.My family .... me out today for passing my exams.

a) are taking b) take c) will take d) had taken

88.My brother Karim ……..................law at Cairo University next year.

a) has studied b) will study c) is going to study d) will have studied

89.By the time my brother is 30, he …………. a successful lawyer!

a) is becoming b) becomes c) will have become d) has become

90.In the future, computers……….…… traditional books.

a) will replaceb) will been replaced c) will be replacing d) will be replaced

91.In the future most of our work ………. by machines.

a) will be doing b) has been done c) will be d) will be done

92.By the time we get to the stadium. The match……….……..

a) will have started b) was starting c) is starting d) had started

93.In the future, every new book will probably be…………. as an e-book.

a) publish b) publishing c) published d) publishes

94.We hope that the road……….......... early morning traffic.

a) is reducing b) will have been reduced c) will be reduced d) will reduce

95.She's going to look for a job as soon as she .... in London.

a) arrive b) have arrived c) will arrive d) arrives

96.There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone....................... home.

a) will be going b) will have gone c) go d) have gone

97.This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we .... our exams.

a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) are finishing

98.By the time you get home, I.....................the house from top to bottom.

a) will clean b) will be cleaning c) will have cleaned d) am cleaning

99- I expect that Zamalik ……… the league. They have the best players and trainer in Egypt.

a)win b)are going to win c) will win d)are winning

100.-For being strong-minded, she…….….easily.

a-won't peruade b – won't be peruaded c–isn't going to peruade d – is being persuaded

Choose the correct English translation:

1- عقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة إيجاد حل لمشكلة الإحتباس الحراري، ولكننا حتى الآن لم نجد الحل الأمثل.

a- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global problem, but we couldn't find the most perfect solution.

b- Many international conferences had held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot find the least perfect solution.

c- Many international conferences have held to find a solution for the global warming, but we cannot be found the most perfect solution.

d- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we haven't found the most perfect solution.

2- مشكلة نقص الماء أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه بلدنا الفترة الحالية وتحاول الحكومة حلها.

a- Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days and the government had tried to solve it.

b- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent nowadays and the government will try to solve it.

c- Water lack is one of the most important problems that support our country those day and the government tried to solve it.

d- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country nowadays and the government tries to solve it.

٣. مهما كان طموحك للمستقبل عليك أن تعمل بجد وصبر لكي تستطيع تحقيقه ولكن تذكر أيضا أن التخطيط الجيد يساعدك في ذلك

1-Whatever your future ambitions are , you should work hard and patiently in order to achieve. But remember that good planning although help you with that .

2-Whatever your future ambition is, we should work hard and patiently in order to achieve it. But remember that good planning although help you with that .

3-Whatever your future ambition is, you should work hard and patiently in order to achieve it. But remember that good planning although helps you with that .

4-Whatever your future ambitions are, we should work hard and patiently in order to achieve. But remember that good planning although help you with that .

Choose the best Arabic translation:

1.Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees give us the best wood for paper grows very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.

١-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو كثيراوالورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه

٢-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجارالتى تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القديم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه

٣-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجارالتى تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصديره

٤-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجارالتى تعطينا أفضل الاثاث تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه

2-Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and you should change your way of life. It can kill you, if you do not notice the warning signals.

١- لا يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.

٢-يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.

٣- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لاحظت إشارات التحذير

٤-: يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التوتر

3-Keeping to rules saves us troubles and avoid us punishment. If people break the rules, it makes life unpredictable. People can get hurt and there could be a complete lack of order.

١-المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى متهمين وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان

٢-المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو خالف الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان .

٣-المحافظة على القوانين يجلب لنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان

٤-المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى فى كل مكان

Test on unit 3

1) Choose the correct answer :

1- I predict that in the future, mobiles -------------------------much smaller .

a) are b) are going to be c) are being d) will be

2- In the past, most the Egyptians worked in fishing and ----------------------------

a) agriculture b) cultivated c) industrial d) agricultural

3. There is a wonderful ....in English teaching which has made a lot of people want to learn it.

a) creative b) innovation c) summary d) invention

4-The film (is starting – is going to start - starts – has started) at 7.30 this evening.

4-My train (is going to leave – leaves – will leave – has left) at 7.15. tomorrow.

5-I've made the arrangements I (will meet – meet –am meeting –met) a friend on Monday.

6-I've decided that I (meet – 'm going to meet – 'll meet – would meet) Professor Ali on Saturday

7-I can't visit my cousins in June because I ---------------------*for a charity-*

a) work b) will work c) am going to work d) will be working

8-By next July , I (will build – am going to build – will have built – will be building) a new villa.

9- Food ....went up after the company bought new equipment for

a) producer b) production c) productive d) deduction.

10- Technological -------- means we can now make seawater safe to drink

a) invent b) invention c) innovation d) inventor

11- The ------------- of crops grown on that farm is huge .

a) vary b) various c) ver d) variety

12- The king or the President should take advice from his ------------- advisors

a) wise b) foolish c) unwise d) silly

13. Farmers get milk and meat from ……………such as goats and sheep.

a. agriculture b. livestock c. innovation d. crops

14. We should develop ur methods of farming to be……………….

a. sustainable b. delivered c. destroyed d. changing

15. Scientists believe that people………….on the moon one day.

a. live b. will live c. will have lived d. are living

16. Don't be late for the bus because it……………….for you.

a. doesn't wait b. won't wait c. isn't waiting d. hasn't waited

17. I can't come to the sports club next week because I ………………to Aswan.

a. will travelling b. will be travelled c. will be travelling d. travels

18. Using new souces of energy will be ………… as we will have no more oil.

a. sustainable b. available c. suitable d. breakable

19. Some ……………..are grown in hot weather. If the weather is cold, they die.

a. crab b. creep c. drop d. crop

20. Food……went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.

a. introduction b. abduction c. production d. prediction

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The stars are beautiful in the night sky. They are far away, farther away than most people can imagine. Even though they are light years away, they can still light up the sky. For thousands of years, people have been interested in stars. They have been used as fortunetellers, calendars and maps. Travellers often used the stars to help them find their way.

Before there was electricity, the stars and moon were the brightest things in the night sky. People spent hours staring up and wondering what the little, twinkling lights were. Back then, the stars were easier to see because there weren't any other lights at night. Not many ancient people realised that the sun was a star. The sun and moon were thought of as father and mother of earth in some ancient cultures. The stars were thought of as lesser gods or the souls of people who had died.

Greek philosophers, 2300 years ago, started to try and unravel the mystery. A man named Anaxagoras thought that the sun was a giant ball of metal burning in the centre of our universe. He was thrown in jail and sentenced to death because this idea conflicted with people's religious beliefs. Even though, people did not stop trying to understand the sun. Scientists still study it today. Large telescopes take pictures of the sun almost every day as we try and learn more about it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What would be the best title for the passage?

a) The sun. b) Stars in the sky.

c) The exploration of space. d) A history of Greek thought

2. Why were stars useful to people?

a) They kept people safe. b) They were beautiful.

c) They showed people the way. d) They burned up dangerous gases.

3. The underlined word "realised" is closest in meaning to ……… .

a) found b) destroyed c) unearthed d) understood

4. The word "unravel" is closest in meaning to ……… .

a) dream b) solve c) imagine d) look for

5. Why was Anaxagoras thrown in jail?
a) He did not believe in God. b) He was not a good philosopher.
c) His ideas were not the same as other people's.
d) He found out that the sun was the same as all the other stars.
6. ……… ancient people realised that the sun was a star.
a) Little b) Less c) Few d) More
7. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ……… .
a) fortunetellers b) years c) stars d) people
8. The stars were thought of as ……… .
a) spirits of people b) mothers of people
c) fathers of people d) close to people

Choose the best Arabic answers::

1-Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and you should change your way of life. It can kill you, if you do not notice the warning signals.

١- لا يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
٢-يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
٣- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لاحظت إشارات التحذير
٤-: يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبى صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التوتر

Choose the best English answers:

–

2يجب أن نكون شاكرين لوالدينا لما قدموا لنا من تضحيات على مدى حياتهم.

1.We should not be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
2.We should be thank to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
3.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
4.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have give us of sacrifices over their lives.

Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

Social media as a double-edged weapon

Revision 1
Based on units 1, 2, 3

Reading

Kareem

I'm a runner who regularly runs very long distances. I need to eat large amounts of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy to run for 30 or 40 kilometers each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost my immune system, which means that I'm less likely to get ill and have to stop training. I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes. When I started boxing, I started eating in a different way. Instead of three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal.
Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food, such as cakes and chocolate.

To : aya@mail.com
From : hadeer@mail.com

Hi Aya

How are you today? I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat.

Do you want to do a cooking course with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local college. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers. You don't need to go to the college to register, you can do it on their website. Just search for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.
Talk to you soon!

Shady

Listening

Interviewer: *Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting hobby. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?*

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, I'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident.

Interviewer: *That sounds great. So you can learn new skills and help other people at the same time.*
Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing a first aid course with about twenty other young people at our sports centre.
Interviewer: *And will you receive a certificate at the end of the course?*
Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can perform basic first aid.
Interviewer: *Great! So you're learning simple techniques to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right?*
Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a bandage on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.
Interviewer: *And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so interesting about it?*
Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.
Interviewer: *So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic*

Workbook Exercises

1) Choose the correct answer :

1. Which is the................boys' name in your class?
a. popular b. biggest c. most popular d. population
2. This book was...............than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
a. bad b. best c. worst d. worse
3. My little sister isn't allowed to play this game because you...............to be more than eight years old to play it, and she's four.
a. have b. must c. should d. don't have
4. You..............run at the swimming pool, or you might fall.
a. have to b. must c. don't have to d. mustn't
5. You..............bring your sun hat today because it is cloudy.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. have to
6. They................to build a new hospital in the city next year.
a. will b. going c. are going d. will be
7. Our class.............working in the laboratory all this afternoon.
a. will b. are going to c. will be d. be
8. I think it...............rain this afternoon.
a. will b. going to c. is d. will be
9. It's my sister's eighteenth birthday today, so my family are going to....... this evening.
a. occasion b. celebrate c. together d. serve
10. Let's...............together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!
a. have b. get c. make d. do
11. The doctors are worried because the man has a............injury.
a. infection b. severe c. injury d. bacteria
12. You need strong...............to lift that box!

a. brain b. heart c. lungs d. muscles

13. Your..............system works better if you eat healthy food.

a. immune b. virus c. organ d. body

14. The farmer keeps a lot of................such as goats and sheep.

a. agriculture b. livestock c. innovation d. crops

15. In some areas, fishing is not.........because one day there will be no fish left.

a. sustainable b. delivered c. destroyed d. changing

16. Some scientists believe that more people..............seaweed in the future.

a. eat b. will eating c. will be eating d. are eating

6) Read the text and answer the questions:

There always seems to be new types of food in the supermarket. But what to do we know about the food that we eat? Do we always know where it comes from, and can we trust it to make us strong and healthy?

Some experts worry that although we are living longer, many people are less healthy than in the past. This might be because we do not always eat healthy food. Food producers all want to sell us their delicious products, but how healthy are they? Scientists tested food that we can buy in supermarkets and the results might surprise you. We all know that you mustn't drink water from the sea, but did you know that there are some types of soap that are saltier than seawater? The scientists also found that some fruit juice is worse for you than fizzy drinks, because although it is natural, it contains a lot of sugar in them!

If you want to buy healthier food, you should check the labels on any food you buy at the supermarket. Personally, I will be cooking my own food from now on. In this way, I will always know the amount of sugar and salt in my meals. That must be a healthier way to eat.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- According to the text, many people today...............than people in the past

a) are healthier b) live longer c) eat nicer food d) use supermarkets more

2- What is the problem with some types of soup?

a) They are made from seawater b) They are fizzy.

c) They are very salty. d) They have a lot of sugar in them.

3- Why do you think food companies put so much salt and sugar in the food which they produce?

a) to make it taste good b) to make it healthier

c) to improve the appearance d) to make it more expensive

4- According to the text, why is it a good idea to check the labels of food at a supermarket?

a) to check the date b) to find the amount of sugar and salt in it

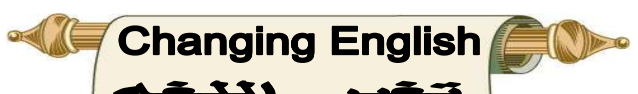
c) to check the price d) to see what it is

8) Choose one of the two topics. Write about 150 words on the topic:

1. Compare your favourite and least favourite meals. Say why you like and dislike them and if they are healthy or unhealthy.

2. Describe why the immune system is important and what you can do to boast it.





By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya

abbreviation	اختصار	suitable	مناسب	survey	استطلاع
later	فيما بعد	no longer	لم يعد	findings	نتائج - اكتشافات
latter	الآخر - الثاني	formal	رسمى	in response	ردا على
laugh	يضحك - ضحكة	linguist	اللغوى	upset	منزعج - متضايق
laughter	الضحك	innovator	مجدد	worried	قلق
a gap	فجوة	actually	فى الواقع	receive	يستقبل
argue	يجادل	introduce	يدخل	selfie	سيلفى
argument	جدال	basic	أساسى	phrases	عبارات
hope	أمل - يأمل	function	وظيفة	words	كلمات
maths	رياضيات	positive	ايجابى	prefix	بادئة
a title	لقب - عنوان	negative	سلبى	suffix	لاحقة
adults	الكبار	order	أمر - يأمر	statement	بيان
reader	قارىء	request	طلب	support	يؤيد
require	يتطلب	encourage	يشجع	debate	مناظرة
grammar	قواعد	warn	يحذر	effects	أثار
punctuation	ترقيم	advantages	مزايا	modern	حديث
appear	يظهر	merits	مزايا	society	مجتمع
disappear	يختفى	disadvantages	عيوب	rather than	بدلا من
emoji	إشعار	demerits	عيوب	Other than	بخلاف
frown	يتجهم	a joke	ينكت - نكتة	misunderstand	يسيء فهم
acronym	اختصار	cite	يستشهد – ينوه	procedures	إجراءات
purpose	غرض	admit	يعترف	section	قسم
tips	نصائح	absolutely	تماما	blog	مدونه
proper	لائق	follow	يتبع	communicate	يتصل
confused	مشوش	reward	يكافىء	communication	اتصال
confusing	مربك	persuade	يقنع	conclusion	خلاصه - خاتمه
mansion	قصر	profit	ربح	introduction	مقدمه
remain	يبقى	stab	يطعن	messaging	المراسله
port	ميناء	plot	يتآمر	tone	نغمه الصوت - نبره
ruin	يدمر	beggar	متسول	advice	نصيحه
headline	عنوان	disbelief	كفر	aim	هدف – يهدف الي
guard	حارس	faithful	مخلص	app(	تطبيق
thesaurus	معجم	pretend	يتظاهر	author	مؤلف
aware of	مدرك ل	comment	تعليق	compare	تعليق
react	يتصرف	mark	علامه - يميز	misuse	يسيء استخدام
movement	حركه	notice	يلاحظ	point	نقطه - يشير
post	منشور - ينشر	connect	يربط - يصل	record	يسجل
endless	بلا نهايه	expression	تعبير	facial	وجهي
headline	عنوان	foreign	اجنبي	immediate	فوري
inform	يبلغ	recognisable	ممكن التعرف عليه	result	نتيجه

Definitions

acronym	a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something	اختصار الاحرف الاولي
emoji	Images with certain expressions used on messaging	رمز تعبيري – إشعار
formal	Official ; following an agreed or official way of doing things	رسمي
linguist	A person who knows several foreign languages well	اللغوي
tone	The change in your voice that shows what you are feeling	نغمه الصوت - نبره

	or thinking.	
not necessarily	A response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct	ليس بالضروره
to frown	To have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy	يتجهم
findings	Information that is discovered as the result of research into something	نتائج ـ اكتشافات
messaging	To send a text message to somebody	المراسله
procedures	A way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way	إجراءات
blog	A personal website diary for other people to read	مدونه
selfie	A photograph you take for yourself	سيلفي
abbreviation	A short form of a word	اختصار
prefix	Letters at the beginning	بادئه
misunderstand	Not understand properly	يسيء فهم
suffix	Letters at the end of a word	خاتمه
thesaurus	A book with similar meanings	موسوعه – معجم
innovator	Introduces new ideas	مبدع

Expressions

Suitable for	مناسب لـ	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
Encourage to	يشجع علي	As soon as possible	بسرعة بقدر المستطاع
Discourage from	يثبط الهمة	Language innovator	مجدد في اللغة
Pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب	Text messages	رسائل نصية
A 15 year old daughter	ابنه تبلغ من العمر ١٥ سنه	A blog post	منشور في مدونه
A guide to messaging	دليل المراسله	As a response to	كرد علي
At least	علي الاقل	careful with	حريص علي
be friends with	يصادق	interested in	مهتم ب
laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عالي	Unkind to	قاسي علي
Couldn't stop crying	لم يستطع التوقف عن البكاء	Upset with	غضبان من
Keep in touch with	يكون علي اتصال مع	Correct spelling	يصحح أخطاء
stay in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال مع	Innovator with language	مبدع في اللغه
Messaging apps	تطبيقات المراسله	Messaging language	لغه المراسله
Rather than	بدلا من- افضل من	On social media	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
Face to face	وجها لوجه	Different to -from	مختلف عن
Facial expression	تعبير وجه	Since= ever since	منذ
Form of information	احد اشكال التواصل	Formal English	انجليزي رسمي
Agree with	يتفق مع	In general	عامه
Apply for	يتقدم ل	What's up ?	ماذا لديك
worried about	قلق بخصوص	in groups	في مجموعات
Chat with	يدردش مع	Come back	يعود
reply to	يرد علي	take away	يبعد
wait for	ينتظر	warn to	يحذر من

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتصل ب	communication	اتصال	communicative	يجيد التواصل
blog	ينظم	Blog -blogger	منظمه		
necessitate	يتطلب - يستلزم	necessity	الضروره	necessary	- ضروري- لازم
abbreviate	يختصر	abbreviation	اختصار	abbreviated	مختصر
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive - معبر -	

regret	يندم	innovator- innovation	مبدع - ابداع	Innovative	ابداعي
benefit	يستفيد	regret	ندم	regretful	نادم
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيري

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonyms	Antonyms	المعنى
hope	يأمل	wish	despair	ييأس
formal	رسمي	official	informal	غير رسمي
understand	يفهم	grasp	misunders	يسيء الفهم
upset	متضايق	annoyed	Happy /	سعيد
encourage	يشجع	support	discourag	يثبط
necessary	ضروري	essential	unnecessa	غير ضروري
negative	سلبي	passive	positive	إيجابي
disappear	يختفي	vanish	appear	يظهر
argument	جدال - خلاف	disagreement	agreement	اتفاق
word	المعنى	synonym	antonym	المعنى

Language Notes

Abbreviations used in text messaging (مستر هشام)اختصارات تستخدم فى إرسال رسائل نصية

1- LOL (laugh out loud)	2- plz (please)
3- gr8 (great)	4- thx (thanks)
5- 2moro(tomorrow)	6- ASAP (as soon as possible)
7- idk (I don't know)	8- cul8r (see you later)

Prefixes بادئة فى أول الكلمات

2- Misunderstand/misbehave/reread/ redo/ reuse/rewrite/ unpopular/unusual

- disadvantage / disabled / illegal / ill-use / impossible / impolite / impatient

Suffixes لاحقة فى آخر الكلام

3 Comfortable / carer / reader / doer / user / careless / writer / teacher /

- employment/employer/careful/useful/useless/action/ punctuation / helpful

4- stop+ (V.ing) يتوقف عن stop to + inf. يتوقف لكى

Stop using such rude words. On the way home, he stopped to buy fruit

5- is / are used to + (V) يستخدم ل is / am / are used to + (V.ing) معتاد على

In text messages, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker

Ali is used to using a lot of emojis in his text messages.

6- learn يتعلم teach يعلم

- It would be a good idea for you to learn some of the basic abbreviations.
- I can teach you some of the basic abbreviations.

7- a number of (الفعل بها يعامل معاملة الجمع) عدد من

- the number of (الفعل بها يعامل معاملة المفرد) عدد ال

-A number of students are waiting in front of the class.

- The number of cars on roads is increasing year after year

8- later فيما بعد - latter الثاني – الآخر

- she found happiness in her later years.
- Ali entered the room firstly. Said was the latter

9- Every day (حال) - Everyday (صفه)

⏭ My mother buys our everyday needs.

⏭ I go to school every day.

10- suit يناسب / suitable مناسب / suitability ملائمة / unsuitable غير مناسب

11- function وظيفة

⏭ The function of the heart is to pump blood through the body.

⏭ **function يعمل**

⏭ despite the power cuts , the hospital continued to function normally .

12- In fact / In truth / Actually (نستخدم هذه الكلمات للتأكيد)

- In fact , people don't have the same level of intelligence .

13- rather than تنفي ما بعدها عن ما قبلها ⏭ other than تضيف ما بعدها لما قبلها

⏭ We should regard nuclear energy as a peaceful means rather than a destructive one.

⏭ Nuclear energy is used in peace other than war.

14- communicate يتواصل – يتفاهم

- We can communicate with our friends by using different ways.

-contac يتصل ب

- I contact by emails with my friends.

- connect يصل – يربط بين شيئين

15- One of the students is absent . يأتي بعد { one of } اسم جمع وفعل مفرد

16-employ يوظف / employer صاحب عمل / employee موظف / employment توظيف / unemployment بطالة

Tourism employs a lot of youth / This factory is the largest employer in our area

17- **hard (adj.)** جاد - صعب - صلب - His work was hard.- The exam was hard.

hard (adv.) بجد - بغزارة - It was raining hard.- We must study hard.

hardly: (adv.) almost no بصعوبة / بشقّ النفس / بالكاد (تدل على النفي)

تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسي و غالبا يسبقها can / could و يمكن أن يليها any

- I could hardly hear her at the back. - I've hardly done any school work this weekend.

18- Take place = happen = occur (يحدث)

- Take part in = share in = participate in = contribute to (يشارك في – يساهم في)

19- I can't help + v. + ing لا استطيع امنع نفسي من

I can't help (to play – playing) football.

15- مستر هشام

تعريفات القصة	
guard	Someone who protects a place or a person
pretend	Act in a way that is not true
reward	Money for someone who finds or helps someone important
persuade	Get someone to do something or agree with you.
profit	Benefit from something
port	A place where ships enter and leave a town or a country
beggar	Someone who asks other people for food or money

disbelief	The feeling that something can not really be happening
faithful	Loyal , continue to support someone
Plot against	Make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person

LISTENING TEXT

Reading

E Reading SB page (25)

Text Messaging

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u ☺ it! For any readers who can'tunderstand the language of text messaging, the translation is:

Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.

In text messages, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require correct spelling or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some linguists suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English. They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

E Reading workbook page (25)

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning! Laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and I warned people not to open any strange emails. It was (gr3) great! They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (cu l8r) and I will tell you all about it.

Khalid

Het Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help! I'm so glad you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post personal information, but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).

Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find any book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (PLZ) look for it again and bring it to school tomorrow (2moro)?

Medhat

E Reading workbook page (25)

Nihal, aged 16

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to be friends with her. I spoke

to her in the playground and we took a selfie together. That afternoon, I posted it online, but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had failed a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, so I decided to reply in the morning. But then, too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now, he thinks that I don't care. What should I do?

E Reading SB page (46)

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But, when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie' became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes and suffixes, for example, he created 'uncomfortable' from 'comfortable'.

Today, the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time. Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

E Reading WB page (26)

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using missing foreign words ever since.

For example, words like cake, eggs and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.



Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognizable because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion, which is a French word.

In the modern age, we often reuse old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

E Reading SB page (46)

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more. So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say,"Send your grandparents a message".

Reading WB page (26)

A summary of a survey into social media use

□ Introduction

The aim of this report is to summarise the findings of the survey into the time students spend using social media.

□ Procedures

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We record our results and compared them.

□ Findings

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully. Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment about it. However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it. Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with their friends, and to follow their interests or hobbies.

□ Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

Listening

E Listening SB page (46)

Messaging:

Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talk time. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda: *Thank you. It's lovely to be her.*

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she admitted that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL-laugh out loud- in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda: *This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easy make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.*

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face- to - face, isn't it?

Dr Magda: *Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically because you can't see the other person's face- is he or she smiling or frowning? And you can't hear their voice- are they angry? Are they making a joke. Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movement. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.*

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda: *Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends, but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversation, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym as a response to your message.*

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda: *Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'*

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more

traditional communication is important.
Dr Magda: *I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.*
Presenter : Great- thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme……

E Listening SB page (46)

Speaker 1:

Tips on how to write a successful blog post.
1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest you and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections of your blog. And add a sub-heading for each section\new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader-use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself use "we".
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite all your sources of information.

Video Script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements, send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased by 7000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in good contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone: that's important too.

Exercises on unit : 4 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Choose the right answers:

1. Zamalik has won five football…….in African championships league.
a)titles b) names c) headings d) tours

2. Our house is so narrowthat we can't……………..guests or give parties.

a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist

3. The story of the murder was in red ………………..in all the newspapers.

a) scenery b) divisions c) addresses d) headlines

4. This young man is a/an……. He introduces changes and new ideas.

a. innovator b. discoverer c. explorer d.surveyor

5. The language of text messages doesn't…..correct spelling.

a. inquire b. acquire c. require d. enquire

6-This application enables the mobile users to send……..messages to a lot of people at the same time.

a-magnetic b-text c-electrical d-toxic

7. Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in…… emails.

a. informal b. formal c. foreign d. fluent

8-When you write a polite request expression at the end of a sentence on phone message or a chat, you can type the abbreviation.

a-LoL b-plz c-ASAP d-gr8

9- UN is the ---------- of the United Nations organisation .

a) abbreviation b) summary c) prevention d) shortage

10-I have two options but I prefer the ----------------- one.

a) latter b) later c) others d) another

11- You should work hard to have rest in your -------------------- life .

a) latter b) later c) others d) another

12- The ------------- between the rich and the poor has become wider after corona virus crisis

a) gape b) friendship c) gap d) relation

13. We shouldn't ……..at anyone ,especially the old.

a) love b) smile c) laughter d) laugh

14-The abbreviation of the adjective "great" in social media and internet language is………..

a-ASAP b-gr8 c-thx d-plz

15-When you send a \ an ………….you can also send a sound or graphic file as an attachment.

a-sigs b-mark c-telegram d-e-mail

16-The doctors were ………..that the patient might have suffered brain damage.

a-pleased b-thankful c-worried d-blissful

17. Some…….believe that using messaging language could harm English and other languages.

a. linguists b. archaeologists c. biologists d. geologists

18. A…………is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.

a. tan b. tune c. ton d) tone

19. My friend Ali seems ill. His face is……………..

a. strong b. fit c. pale d) right

20 I…………………..about all my children. I hope that are good citizens.

a) care b) ignore c) devise d) behave

21-Dr.Zewail was a\ an ……….as he introduced many new ideas in the field of chemistry.

a-idiot b-innovator c-philosopher d-linguist

22-You must………….your computer password frequently so that no stranger can use your personal information.

a-interchange b-change c-intercode d-exchange

23 Many people don't buy newspapers any more as they read them……….

a) outline b) inline c) offline d) online

24.The postmen deliver…………………and letters at homes.

a) icons b) sales c) parces d) inventions

25.I…….not completing my education. It was the worst decision I've ever made.

a) regret b) rejoice c) recommend d) please

26. It is said that dolphins use sound to …………….with each other.

a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

27- My friends always --------------------- about their favourite players and teams .

a) argue b) question c) need d) tell

28- They have --------------------- about trivial things and itends up not talking to each other .

a) agreement b) argument c) agree d)argue

29-The lack of rain………a severe shortage of food products.

a-created b-issued c-reduced d-frowned

30- This kind of work ------------- high qualifications and proficiency at languages .

a) acquires b) requires c) enquires d) enquiry

31- When you write a paragraph , you should put the ---------------- marks in their place .

a) education b) grammar c) punctuation d) spelling

32. The symptoms of the infectious disease ------------------- on your face .
a) appear b) disappear c) vanish d) hide
33- The police are looking for the woman who has ----------------------- suddenly .
a) appeared b) disappeared c) come d) seen
34. The internet has become the most important means of ......nowadays.
a) link b) connection c) affection d) communication
35.The verb "reply" can be the opposite to the verb ....
a) accept b) request c) offer d) answer
36 Mohamed..........angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
37. The word "reaction" is similar in meaning to the adverb...
a) response b) activity c) ability d) relaxation
38.In English 'Dr' is written as a/an....of 'Doctor'
a) form b) type c) abbreviation d) replacement
39- You shouldn't ------------- at children . They don't understand how we suffer..
a) frown b) welcome c)cheerful d) funny
40. The one who knows many languages is called -------------------
a) scientist b) linguist c) sociologist d) archaeologist
41. Most jobs today.........computer and language skills.
a) require b) acquire c) inquire d) protect
42. The suspect finally..........that he stole the mobile.
a) cancelled b) hid c) disbelieved d) admitted
43-Some distant villages in Upper Egypt lack..........services such as water and electricity.
a-minor b-unimportant c-trivial d-basic
44 One............of smoking is the cause of lung diseases.
a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) form
45. We must take...........steps to deal with the problem of water pollution.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive
46- Terrorism has a ------------ impact on our economy as it destroys tourism.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive
47-The ---------------- of the heart is to pump blood around the body .
a) job b) facture c) vocation d) function
48-The synonym of the word advantages is ....
a) demerits b) merits c) drawback d) sidedown
49. A/An..........is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) intent
50 Our boss is very......... He doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) normal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal
51-Scientists ....the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a-completed b-compared c-conducted d-coded
52.Mrs Ola..........at her children, who were full of mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced
53 Always give clear instructions so that they won't be......
a) mismanaged b) misunderstood c) misdirected d) misused
54. The car is hardly............because of the bad accident.
a-recognize b-recognizable c-unrecognizable d-unrecognized
55-The noun —analysis is a synonym to the noun............
a-intention b-application c-diploma d-survey
56 My grandmother always talk to people in a friendly...............
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note
57-My mother was -------------- about me when I was late last night.
a) worried b) content c) pleased d) happy
58.Television, radio and other forms of mass..........have made the world a global village.
a) link b) connection c) affection d) communication
59- Everyone should ---------------- in touch with ther good friends
60- The ----------------- un is added to the beginning of the word to give its opposite
a) prefix b) suffix c) duplex d) fix
61- The ---------------------- ment is added to the end of the word to give the noun from it
a) suffix b) prefix c) preface d) previous -
62- We should --------------------- the elder people in our families and help them.
a) import b) export c) support d) resort

63. A........is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler
64. My friend sent me a text......telling me that he had succeeded.
a) message b) massage c) passage d) messenger
65. Teachers should have right.........qualities to be a good teacher.
a) personal b) personnel c) public d) general
66.The word "alert" is a synonym to the word.....................
a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) warn
67 There was an.........of fear on the child's face when she saw the lion.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) excessive
68---------------- is a short form of a word or an expression.
a) Abbreviation b) Acronym c) Deviation d) Cultivation
69- ---------------- is a word formed from the first letters of the name of something .
a) Abbreviation b) Acronym c) Deviation d) Cultivation
70---------------- is a personal website diary for other people to read .
a) A letter b) An e-mail c) A blog d) A message
71- ---------------- is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites .
a) A video b) An image c) A photo d) An emoji
72- -------------- is information that is discovered as the result of research into something
a) Information b) Finding c)Find out d) Invention
73- To --------- is to have an expression on your face that shows you are unhappy .
a) smile b) laugh c) fry d) frown
74- An --------------- is the person who introduces new ideas .
a) innovator b) investigator c) inspector d) engineer
75-A --------------- is someone who studies or teaches languages .
a) plumber b) professor c) linguest d) scientist
76- ----------- is the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment.
a) Letters b) Messaging c) Massage d) passage
77 The police fired a number of........shots to make the people move away.
a) warn b) warning c) warring d) cautious
78.The verb "expand" can be the opposite to the verb.........
a) increase b) summarize c) mount d) depend
79.They carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's.....
a) organisation b) society c) community d) aspect
80. The........... of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers understand yourview.
a) introduction b) extension c) conclusion d) start
81. My father gave me a………………when I came first at school.
a) prize b) occasion c) gift d) awarded
82 The young couple gave each other some.........at Christmas.
a) prizes b) awards c) gifts d) columns
83 You should start any talk by giving the...............facts.
a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic
84. The thief finally …………….that he killed the old man.
a) cancelled b) hid c) disbelieved d) admitted
85 One............of the area is the lack of public transport.
a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) form
86. Sports have ....effect on the health of people.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive
87 My grandmother always talk to people in a friendly........
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note
88. People whose job.........staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) acquires b) inquires c) requires d) expires
89 Scientists always......of scientific experiments which can go wrong.
a) recommend b) intend c) expect d) warn
90.Do you possess the right.........qualities to be a good teacher?
a) personal b) personnel c) public d) general
91. Mohamed Salah s family played a very.........role in his success.
a) perplexing b) passive c) positive d) negative

92- The ------------ is a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings .
a) thesaurus b) atlas c) encyclopaedia d) panel
93- A -------------- is a change in your vice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
a) tomb b) tone c) tune d) tear
94- A ---------- is a way of doing something , especially the correct or usual way
a) process b) operation c) procedure d) product
95- People who travel by sea , go to the --------------- to take their ship .
a) airport b) railway station c) bus station d) port
96-The police are going to remove the (raft – rust – rash - ruins) of the earthquake .
97-The --------------- managed to arrest the thief who tried to steal money from the bank,
a) garden b) goat c) guard d) gallery
98- I am sure I will be able to -------------- him to accept the offer .
a) let b) have c) persuade d) pretend
99-The man who found my wallet deserved (a reward – an award – lift – a theft).
100 – The child -------------- his mother wherever she went.
a) followed b) left c) came d) went
101- The ------------ asked me for money to help his poor family.
a) minister b) president c) beggar d) representative
102-The king always wants -------------- servants to serve him .
a) unreliable b) dishonest c) disabled d) faithful
103-The boy ----------------- to be ill in order not to go to school.
a) said b) pretended c) told d) informed
104- We looked at her with --------- when she said that she could drive a car without training
a) disbelief b) dishonesty c) disinfection d) disguise
105-We don't usually use………….English when we send text messages.
A – informal b- formal c- usual c- normal
106.In the world of technology, an ………..is someone who can improve or create new devices.
a-initiative b- innovator c- irritator d- revolver
107.ASAP is an………………………of 'as soon as possible'
a-acronym b- antonym c- synonyms d- opposite
108.All the ships had to remain in their …………due to the bad weather.
a-routes b- roads c- ports d- parts
109.There was a…………..at every door in the castle to help protect the king.
a-guard b- regard c- grad d- playgoer
110. I will try to…………….my mother to let me go to the cinema tomorrow.
a-allow b- persuade b- ask d- elude
111. Look! Someone is offering a……………..if we find the lost mobile phone.
a-award b- ward c- word d- reward
112. If you get a benefit from something, you……………………..from it.
a-profitable b- profit c- beneficial d- beneficiary
113.The police will…………………the suspect to see where he goes.
a-fellow b-follow c- follower d- fellowship
114.My mother usually gives money to any…………she sees on the street.
a-bigger b- asker b- requester d- beggar
115.During the difficult times the soldiers remained………………..to the king.
a-Unfaithful b- faith c- faithful d- disloyal
116. The children…………to be kings and queens when they are playing.
a-intend b- attend c- contend d- pretend
117. Everyone looked at him in……when my brother said he wanted to climb the mountain
a-disbelief b- belief c- believe d- unbelievable
118. To …………………….. here is to arrive at a place
a-gift b- get c- hold d- stay
119.To …………………is to speak loudly to people can hear you far away
a-Call for b- call in c- call out d- call at

120.When a friend breaks your trust , it is a .... in the back.
a-stab b-strap c- step d- stub

Grammar

Reporting verbs with infinitive clauses

(Said to =told /asked / advised / begged / warned / threatened / suggested)

♦ نستخدم (to + inf). فى الإثبات و نستخدم (not to + inf). فى النفـــى بعد الأفعال السابقة:

♣"Open your books." ♣"The teacher told / asked / ordered us to open our books.
♣" "Don't waste time." ♣"My father advised me not to waste time.
♣"Study science at university." ♣"Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.
♣" "If I were you, I'd take your coat" ♣My mother advised me to take my coat

للحديث عن الأوامر او الطلب او النصيحة نستخدم الفعل متبوعا بمفعول غير مباشر (شخص) ثم المصدر

verb + indirect object (people) + to + infinitive المصدر

Some reporting verbs are followed by the indirect object and the infinitive + to

Verbs used to report orders include أفعال تستخدم لتبليغ الأوامر :

Tell يخبر order يأمر instruct يعطي تعليمات

The teacher told me to read *The officer ordered the soldier to fire .*
the coach instructed the players to pass a lot

Verbs used to report orders requests أفعال تستخدم للتبليغ عن الطلب :

Ask يسأل invite يدعو remind يذكر

She asked Sami to close the door Omar asked me to help him .
I invited Ahmed to have lunch with me Remind me to go to the office early

Verbs used to report positive advice include أفعال تستخدم للتبليغ عن نصيحة ايجابية :

Advise ينصح encourage يشجع

Her parents always encourages her to sing
Rami advised Imad not to go out as it was raining

Verbs used to report negative advice include أفعال تستخدم للتبليغ عن نصيحة سلبية :

warn يحذر

She warned him not to smoke.
When would you warn people not to use messaging ?

Grammar

Could / should (المضارع - الماضي) الفرق بين

1- could نستخدم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة العامة فى الماضى مع سهوله عمل الشىء

- When I was young , I could swim fast .
He couldn't lift the box as it was too heavy

(لا نستخدم could ولكن نستخدم managed to او was / were able to فى وقت محدد فى الماضى مع وجود صعوبه)

- My sister was able to read at the age of four .
- Our armed forces managed to (were able to) cross the Suez canal in October War

2- Polite request نستخدم (could) فى المستقبل للتعبير عن طلب مؤدب

- Could I use you mobile? - Could you lend me a sum of money ?

نستخدم (could) للتعبير عن تخمين ضعيف فى المضارع

- My father could be sleeping at this moment (could be + v+ ing) فى الاستمرار نستخدم
- She could be preparing our lunch now .

٢- نستخدم (could have+ pp) للتعبير عن استنتاج في الماضي

-My friend **was absent** yesterday . He **could have been** ill.

- The streets are dry .It **couldn't have rained last night** week .

- He **didn't come** to visit us. He **could have been** busy.

3- To say that someone had the ability to do something buy they didn't do

كان يقدران يفعل شيء ولكنه لم يفعل

-She **could have bought** a new mobile but **she didn't**

- I **could have watched** the match on the stadium but I watched it on TV.

&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&

2- Should نستخدمها للتعبير عن النصيحة والاقتراح أو ما يجب ان يكون

(It is important / It is advisable / It is essential /It is desirable)

-It is important to study hard -You should study hard

- It is desirable for him not to come late -He had better not come late

-It is essential for her to be home now . - She ought to be home now .

-What should I do if I have a toothache ? لطلب النصيحة نستخدم

نستخدم (should) في الاقتراح

- You **should eat** in this restaurant .It serves good dishes .

- We **should leave** now to catch our train .

في الاستمرار نستخدم (should be + v + ing)

- You should / ought to be helping your brother now .

- He has an exam . He shouldn't / oughtn't to be spending too much time watching TV.

- Why are you at home ? You should / ought to be attending your school .

في التعليمات الرسمية نستخدم (should) فقط وليس (ought to)

-Students **shouldn't come** late for their exams .

-You **should get** a recent passport to travel abroad

//

في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة الاتية

(should have / ought to have + التصريف الثالث)

للحديث عن ان شيء ما كان اختيار أفضل في الماضي ولكنه لم يحدث

-You **should have asked** Magda for help with your homework. (لم يطلب منها)

- He **should have joined** university . (ينضم للجامعه)

&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&&

2- To talk about regrets للحديث عن الندم

- I **should have worked** harder at school.

- I **ought to have studied** harder last year .

- She **should have put** her phone down - You **should have given up** smoking

-**Should you have called** your grandparents yesterday ?

3- To make predictions للتعبير عن التنبؤ

-They **should have arrived** by now .

-It is half past two . He **should have left** work before now.

٤- للتعبير عن ان شيء ما في الماضي لم يكن فكرة جيدة لكن الشخص قام به

- Aya **shouldn't hav sleep** so late last night .

-She **shoun't ve got** upset . - He **shouldn't have made** noise .

//

5- (should / be supposed to / be meant to)

- He **should be** at home at 7 .= - She **is supposed to be** at home before sunset.

= she is meant to be at home at 7 .

- You should't make noise in class = - You are not supposed to make noise in class.

- You aren't meant to make noise in class.

$$

Mr El Sebaei Exercises on Grammar تمارين الوحدة الرابعة Mr El Sebaei

Choose the right answers:

1-I traveled by train, but I…………………by car.
a) might have travelled b) could travel c) could have travelled d) can travel

2 I……………. my paragraph well yesterday; it was full of mistakes.
a. should have checked b. should check c. shouldn't have checked d. should not check

3. My teacher …………… us to read short stories to improve our English.
a. encouraged b. discouraged c. said d. warned

4-My teacher ------------------ me to read a lot of books.
a) advising b) advises c) advised d) advise

5. I missed the train ; I…………….up late last night.
a. should have stayed b. could have stayed c. shouldn't have stayed d. needn't stay

6-My parents ……………… me not to watch a lot of TV.
a) suggested b) encouraged c) warned d) asked

7-He has left his car over there. He…………….that. There is a "No waiting" sign .
a) mustn't do b) shouldn't have done c) shouldn't do d) should have done

8. She ……………..met Ayman in the club yesterday because he was ill.
a. couldn't have b. could have c. have d. should have

7. I …………………..a lot of exercises to avoid the pain in my knees.
a. should do b. should have done c. I have to do d. could have done

8. My friend…………..me to attend his party.
a) ordered b) advised c) invited d) suggested

9.The tour guide warned the tourists……..into the desert on their own.
a) not to go b) to go c) that they go d) going

10. I can't find my glasses. Can you…..me to look for them.
a) suggest b) advise c) help d) warn

11-You…………your friend yesterday. He was in a problem.
a-should help b-should have helped c-ought have helped d) must have helped

12.I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I…. .a book to read.
a) shouldn't have brought b) should have brought c) could bring d) should bring

13.You---------his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.
a) should have heard b) could have heard c.) couldn't t have heard d) shouldn't have heard

14-He…………..a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
a-consulted b-must have consulted c-could have consulted d-needn't have consulted

15.You………bought a new camera, which wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.
a) should have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) should have

16-They went to Aswan by plane but they……………………have gone by train .
a) shall b) needn't c) must d) could

17-Ramy……………his exam as he seems to be unhappy.
a-could pass b-could have passed c-can't have passed d) should have passed

18-Hesham didn't go to the doctor's yesterday although he………………have gone .
a) must b) ought to c) needn't d) shouldn't

19-I didn't know there was a meeting today. You…………………me .
a) should have told b) should tell c) had to tell d) needn't have told

20-Ashraf ……………… been unkind to his sister. He knew she would be upset.
a) mustn't be b) shouldn't have been c) shouldn't be d) should have been

21-Hamid was working with me all day, so you …………. him at the park.
a) couldn't have seen b) could see c) could have seen d) can see

22. She………to the restaurant if she'd left work earlier.
a) couldn't have come b) could have come c) could come d) should come

23.The exit doors were blocked so people……..from the burning hall.
a) shouldn't have escaped b) couldn't have escaped c) could have escaped d) could escape

24-He……….have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a-oughtn't b-should c-needn't d-must

25.A: I had to walk home yesterday: I had no money for my fare.
.B. Why didn't you tell me! I……you the money!

a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent c) could have lent d) could lend
26. Ali wasn't at the scene of the crime, so he..........have been guilty.
a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should
27-I........have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick.
a-couldn't b-could c-should d-shouldn't
28.You look tired ! You.......to bed earlier last night.
a) couldn't have gone b) shouldn't have gone c) should have gone d) might go
29. You............your friend yesterday as he was in a big problem.
a)should have helped b) should help c) could help d) oughtn't have helped
30. He............have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn't cold outside.
a) could b) shouldn't c)must d) might
31-The teacher warned the children to look and listen before they .... the road
a) crossed b) cross c) are crossing d) have crossed
32-The teacher encouraged the class to .... their best.
a) trying b) have tried c) tried d) try
33-She advised me (arrive – to arrive – arriving – had arrived) early.
34-Tarek .... them to see the film.
a) said b) encouraged c) warned d) suggested
35-She .... me to pay for the shirt over there.
a) tells b) told c) said to d) said
36-My father warned me .... careful of fast cars.
a) for be b) to be c) not to be d) be
37. You..........have seen Hady in the park this morning. He has been with me at my house all day.
a) should b) might c)must d) couldn't
38. He..........have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work.
a) can't b) must c) could d) might
39. Ali ....have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b)must c) might d) should
40.I called her but there was no answer. She........left for Alexandria already.
a) can't have b) should have c) has probably d) may have
41-He ....have finished the exam . He is clever.
a-might not b-can't c-must d-should
42.Fady..........his exam as he seems happy.
a) could pass b)can't have Passed c) could have passed d) shouldn't have passed
43.She's late. She.........have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b)may c) can't d) should
44 -The teacher .... that we must open our books at page 20.
a) tells b) told c) said to d) said
45-My friend told me .... on the wall.
a) not to sit b) to not sit c) for sit d) not sit
46-The referee .... the player to stop the game.
a) ordering b) to order c) order d) ordered
47. He.........much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked c) should have worked d) could work
48-Our neighbors........have cut down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a-should b-couldn't c-can't d-shouldn't
49. My brother.........to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone c) could go d) couldn't have gone
43. Sara's mother warned her........the oven because it was hot.
a) to touch b) not to touch c) touching d) don't touch
44. -The teacher .... that we must open our books at page 20.
a) tells b) told c) said to d) said
45-My friend told me .... on the wall.
a) not to sit b) to not sit c) for sit d) not sit
48-The referee .... the player to stop the game.
a) ordering b) to order c) order d) ordered
49-The tour guide .... the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
a) warned b) encouraged c) discouraged d) suggested
50-Maya ....Ola to start revising for the test.
a) ordered b) suggested c) warned d) advised
51-The teacher .... the students to stop running in the corridor.
a) warned b) suggested c) ordered d) discourage

52. The doctor …………. me to take off my jacket.
a) asked b) encouraged c) warned d) suggested
53-My teacher ………………. that I study languages.
a) asked b) encouraged c) warned d) suggested
54.13-My parents ……………… me not to waste time.
a) suggested b) encouraged c) warned
55-Tarek ………………… them to see the film.
a) said b) encouraged c) warned d) suggested
56-She ………….. me to pay for the shirt over there.
a) tells b) told c) said to d) said
5719-My partner warned me ………………. careful of fast cars.
a) for be b) to be c) not to be d) be

Choose the best Arabic translation:

1 The Egyptian monuments and museums attract millions of tourists from all over the world. We ought to exert more efforts to increase the number of tourists visiting Egypt nowadays.
١.لاتجذب الاثاروالمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاءالعالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدامن الجهود لزيادةعدد السياح هذه الايام
٢.تجذب الاثاروالمتاحف المصرية بلايين من السياح من جميع أنحاءالعالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدامن الجهود لزيادة السياح هذه الايام
٣.تجذب الاثاروالمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاءالعالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدامن الجهود لزيادةعدد السياح هذه الايام
٤.تجذب الاثاروالمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاءالبلاد ويجب أن نبذل مزيدامن الجهود لزيادةعدد السياح تلك الايام

2- Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football. But they don't have to do special exercise to be fit. In this case, walking or even cleaning the house is just as good for them as practicing games.
١.بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغلون بالسباحه او لعب كره السله ولكن يمارسون التمارين الرياضيه تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحاله فأن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الرياضه
٢.بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغلون بالسباحه او لعب كره القدم ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الرياضيه تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحاله فأن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الالعاب
٣.بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغلون بالسباحه او لعب كره السله ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الالعاب تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحاله فأن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الرياضه
٤.بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغلون بالسباحه او لعب كره السله ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الالعاب تجعلهم لاثقين فنيا وفي هذه الحاله فأن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الالعاب

3. People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast. To remain employable, people must always look ahead and learn new knowledge and skills.
١.يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يحب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكى تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
٢ .يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يحب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ليس ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكى تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
٣ .يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن الثقافه يحب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكى تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
٤.يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يحب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة قليله ولكى تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات قديمه.

Choose the best English translation:

يجب أن نكون شاكرين لوالدينا لما قدموا لنا من تضحيات على مدى حياتهم.
1.We should not be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
2.We should be thank to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
3.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
4.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have give us of sacrifices over their lives.

لقد أصبحت ضرورة ملحة البدء فى إنشاء عاصمة جديدة بدل من القاهرةً .
1.It has became an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
2.It have become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
3.It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
4. It has become an urgent need to begin set up a new capital instead of Cairo.

يمكن تجنب الكثير من الامراض عن طريق اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.
1.It's not possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.
2.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by fallowing healthy dietary habits.
3.It's possible to avoid lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.
4.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

Test Unit Four

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I (can – could – may – must) have taken the train but I travelled by bus .
2- They have low marks . They (should – must may – might) have studied harder .
3- The officer (told – said – encouraged – wge – say – tell – advice) me to work hard.
5- The ------------ "er" changes the word employ from a verb to a noun .
a) suffix b) prefix c) focus d) locusts
6- I will ---------------- my friends to have dinner with me at a nice restaurant.
a) say b) instruct c) invite d) warn
7-There were drops of water in the streets .It --------------- have rained last night..
a) could b) will c) can d) mustn't
8- The teacher encouraged his students ------------------- more efforts.
a) exert b) to exert c) exerting d) from exerting
9- My mother warned me not to laugh (at – on – to – of) anyone.
10-ur two points but the ------------- point is the most important .
a) later b) late c)latter d) latest
11-How did you --------------- to the news of your friend's death?
a) respond b) response c) express d) feel
12- You will losr train , (quick – fast – speedy – speed) up to catch it.
13- ------------------- people leads to great disagreement .
a) Misunderstand b) Misunderstanding c) Misunderstands d)Misunderstanding
14-LOL is the (antonym – navigation – abbreviation – aviation) of laugh out loudly .
15- To create new ways which can help us to make progress , we need great ------------------
a) innovator b)beggars c) corrupters d) smugglers
16-My father is an excellent -------------------- He knows several foreign languages .
a) linguistic b) linguistically c) inguist d)biologist

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I am so sorry to tell you the worst story in my life. It happened eight years ago. One day, I asked my father for some money. It was the first time to hear his answer “Not Now!”. He said that angrily. I was the only son after three daughters and I used to find everything I wanted. That nervous answer, "Not Now!”, was a shock to me. In fact, my mother was very il, and a doctor came as my father phoned him. My sisters were running from a room to another. There were some neighbours who came home help. I don’t try to understand what was happening. I only wanted money. There was a bag on the table. The bag was open and I could see some money and other things inside it. Quickly, I took the bag and went out. After about an hour, I returned home. Now, It was a more terrible shock. There were more and more people. My mother had died! My father and sisters were crying so badly. While I was looking at them next to my Dead mother, I heard someone shouting, “If the doctor’s bag hadn’t disappeared, he would have used his mobile or that medicine to save her!”

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17) Some people came because…………………. .
a. the doctor’s bag was stolen b. the medicine disappeared
c. the mother was very ill d. the father’s mobile was lost
18) The writer’s mother died…………..he went out
a. before b. after c. until d. but
19) When that story happened, the writer was………….. .
a. younger b. older c. wiser d. more helpful
20) The needed medicine for the mother was…………………………. .
a. inside the rooms b. in the hospital
c. inside the doctor’s bag d. with the neighbours.

B) Answer the following questions :

21- Why do you think the father didn't give the writer money at that time ?
22- In your opinion, who was the cause of the poor mother's death?
23-What was the writer's first shock? **24-Why didn't the doctor use his mobile?**

Choose the best Arabic translation:

4.Health is a splendid blessing that completes our happiness. It›s worthy saying that we can›t really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person life is no more pain and suffering.

١.إن الثروه نعمة جميلة والتى تكمل سعادتنا وهى تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. .فالاصحاء يفخرون بما يحققوة فى مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للانسان المريض الحياة ماهى الا مجرد الام ومعاناه
٢. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتى تكمل سعادتنا وهى تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالاصحاء يفخرون بما يحققوة فى مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للانسان المريض الحياة ماهى الا مجرد الام ومعاناه
٣. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتى تكمل سعادتنا وهى تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالاصحاء يفخرون بما يحققوة فى مجال الرياضة والعمل السهل فبالنسبة للانسان المريض الحياة ماهى الا مجرد الام ومعاناه
٤. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتى تكمل سعادتنا وهى تستحق القول بأننا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالاصحاء يفخرون بما يحققوة فى مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للانسان المريض الحياة ماهى الا مجرد الام وسعاده

Choose the best English translation:

ينبغى أن نحافظ على نظافة مدينتنا ونحميها من التلوث بكافة صوره.

1.We should maintain the clean of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
2.We should not maintain the cleanliness of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
3.We should maintain the cleanliness of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
4.We should maintain the cleanliness of our city and protective it from pollution in all its forms.

27-Write an essay about one hundred and fifty (150) words on the following:

"Different ways to be healthy."



Being smart online

By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya



smart	ذكي - أنيق	download	ينزل	behaviour	سلوك
research	يبحث - بحث	take down	يزيل	profile	ملف
task	مهمة	excuse	عذر	sensible	عاقل
avoid	يتجنب	Upgrade..with	تحديث	symbol	رمز
unhelpful	غير متعاون	upload	يحمل	include	يشمل
effectively	بفاعلية	banner	شعار	entertain	يسلي
efficient	كفء	fire	يفصل من العمل	Forum	منتدى
a company	شركة	cookies	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	post	يرسل علي النت
honest	امين	identity	هويه	knowledge	معرفه
likes	اعجابات	relevant	ملائم - مناسب	represent	يمثل
experience	خبرة	instant	فوري	rank	يصنف
knowledge	معرفة	advertise	يعلن	presentation	عرض
topic	موضوع	advertiser	معلن	a set of	مجموعة من
moral	هدف اخلاقي	name	يسمي	obvious	واضح
Up- to -date	حديث	Advertisement=advert	اعلان	rules	قواعد
affect	يوثر علي	App= application	تطبيق	argument	جدال
tone	اسلوب - نبره	Banner advert	اعلان علي لافته	Search results	نتائج البحث
platform	منصه – رصيف قطار	plus	+ -بالاضافه الي	browser	متصفح
button	زرار	character	رمز خاص - شخصيه	Chat with - to	يدردش
common	عام - شائع	cons	عيوب	pros	مميزات
create	يخلق - يبدع	criticise	ينقد	distract	يلهي - يشتت
limit	يحد -يقلل- محدود	download	ينزل	behaviour	سلوك
addict	يمن - مدمن	target	هدف	digital	رقمية
update	يحدث	views	مشاهدات	footprints	أثار قدم
consult	يستشير	comment	تعليق	security	الأمن
extra	إضافي	specific	محدد	subscribe	يشترك
facts	حقائق	seem	يبدو	private	خاص
uniform	زي موحد	suppose	يفترض	follower	متابع
resources	موارد	mean	يعني	details	تفاصيل
professional	محترف	meaningful	ذات معنى	programmers	مبرمجين
victim	ضحيه	spread	ينشر	programming	برمجه
image	صورة	social	اجتماعي	install	يركب
discussion	مناقشة	media	إعلام	version	نسخة
wonderful	رائع	set eyes on	ينظر	access to	اقتراب من
locate	يحدد موقع	survey	فحص-مسح	print	يطبع
journalist	صحفي	register	يسجل	patience	الصبر
publish	ينشر	represent	يمثل	go mad	يجن
sociology	علم اجتماع	highlight	يلقي ضوء	room	مكان
influence	تأثير	general	عام	shelter	مأوي-يأوي
fake	يزيف - زائف	link	يربط	interest	يهم - اهتمام
musician	موسيقار	apologise	يعتذر	spies	جواسيس
spread	ينشر	double	يضاعف	disagreement	عدم اتفاق
reliable	موثوق فيه	target	هدف	digital	رقمية
adapt to	يتكيف – يتأقلم	sociology	علم الاجتماع	superficiality	سطحيه – عدم تركيز
sponsor	راعي	stamp	طابع	targeted	موجه
skim	يتصفح	warning	تحذير	task	مهمه

Definitions

behaviour	The way that somebody behaves, especially towards other people .	سلوك
reliable	That can be trusted to do something well ; that you can rely on	موثوق به
update	To make something more modern and relevant by adding new information	يحدث
Up-to-date	Modern / fashionable / having or including the most recent information	حديث
download	To move files from the internet to a phone , tablet or a computer	ينزل من النت
take down	To remove a message or photo you have put on social media	يزيل
upload	To move files from a computer , phone or camera to the internet	يرفع علي النت
A tone	The general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing	اسلوب – نبره
cookies	Information that a website leaves in your computer to recognize you	ملفات تعريف الارتباط
view	An occasion when a post , an image or a video is watched online.	مشاهده – رؤيه
upgrade	To improve or make more efficient / to make something better	يحسن
consult	To ask somebody for advice	يستشير
follower	Someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person .	متابع

Expressions

Research into	يبحث في	On social media	علي مواقع التواصل الاجتماعية
A resource for research	مصدر للبحث	Free for	مجاني
On the profile	علي صفحتك	The other day	مؤخرا
Search result	نتيجة البحث	Specific information	معلومات محددة
download from	ينزل من علي الانترنت	A set of rules	مجموعة قواعد
I see your point	اتفهم وجهه نظرك	Instead of	بدلا من
Upload to	يحمل علي الانترنت	Security and safety	الأمن والأمان
At meals times	في اوقات الوجبات	At a touch of a button	بلمسة زرار
Access to	يقترب من	Targeted adverts	إعلانات موجهة
Junk food	وجبات سريعه	Loads of	الكثير من
Badly designed	مصمم بطريق سيئه	Addicted to	مدمن ل
Apply for	يتقدم ل	Connect to	يتصل ب
Advertise for a job	يعلن عن وظيفة	Sponsored adverts	إعلانات مدعومة
Find out	يكتشف	Take ....off	ينزع
Eager to	مشتاق ل	Fact checking	توثيق الحقائق
For ages	لمده طويله	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط الموقع
Advert for	اعلان عن	As a result of	كنتيجة ل
Be distracted by - with	ملهي ب	Careful about	حريص بخصوص
Apply for a job	يتقدم لوظيفة	Fake account	حساب مزيف

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	اعلان	advertised	مُعلن عنه
affect	يؤثر علي	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك	behavioural	سلوكي
consult	يستشير	consultant	مستشار		
download	ينزل من النت	download	الملف المنزل	downloadable	ــقابل للتنزيل -

follow	يتبع	follower	متابع	following	تابع
rely	يعتمد	reliance	التواكل	reliable	موثوق به
subscibe	يسجل في موقع	subsciption	اشتراك		

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمه	Synonyms	Antonyms	المعني
reliable	موثوق فيه	Trustworthy/ dependable	unreliable	غير موثوق فيه
Up-to-date	حديث	Modern / recent	Out of date	قديم
update	يحدث	modernize	neglect	يهمل
smart	ذكي	Intelligent	stupid	غبي
sensible	عاقل	Practical	Insensible	أحمق
specific	محدد	Precise / particular	general	عام
upgrade	يرقي	promote	downgrad	يخفض المنزلة
upgrade	يحسن	Improve / enhance	degrade	يقلل من شأن
suitable	مناسب	appropriate	unsuitable	غير مناسب

Language Notes

1-sensible عاقل – حكيم - sensitive حساس – سريع التأثر
- sensible idea فكرة معقولة
- sensible shoes (useful rather than fashionable)

2- smart ذكي -smart village قرية ذكية -smart phone تليفون ذكي

3-advertisement اعلان تجاري -commercial اعلان تجاري تليفزيوني -announcement اعلان رسمي

4- research بحث - do research into = research into يبحث في

5 avoid + v+ ing - You should avoid accompanying bad people .

6-update يحدث (يجعله حديثا) - upgrade يحسن – يرقي التطبيق

7- influence / effect / impact تأثير
- Shakespeare was an influential writer كاتب مؤثر
- effective فعال
- you should take part in the race effectively بفاعلية

8- share يشارك = participate = take part in
⏭ effective participation مشاركة فعالة

9- accompany يصطحب - company صحبة - a company شركة = a firm

10- rely on يعتمد علي - reliable موثوق – جدير بالثقة - unreliable غير جدير بالثقة
- reliance اعتماد – اتكال = dependence -reliability = confidence ثقة

11- consult يستشير
- I consult my lawyer in some cases - consultant مستشار

12- aim هدف - يهدف - a goal هدف في المرمي - a goal هدف في الحياة - a target هدف

13- apply for يتقدم لوظيفة -applicant متقدم لوظيفة - apply يطبق - application تطبيق

14-behave يتصرف = conduct
- behave yourself تأدب - behaviour = conduct سلوك

15- symbolize يرمز - symbol رمز
⏭ The statue of liberty is the symbol of freedom

16- slogan / motto شعار - a campaign slogan شعار الحملة / - a banner راية – علم ⏭ A huge banner over the street said " Welcome home"
17- digital رقمي (a digital camera / digital terrestrial ارضي and digital satellite)
⏭ private property ممتلكات خاصة ⏭ special خاص exceptional (special circumstances)
18- register يسجل - I want to register my new car tomorrow . - score يسجل (a goal – a point) - record (Voices or sounds)
19- experiment تجربة معملية- an experience يجرب - experience يجرب - experience خبرة

READING & LISTENING

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

1- Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

2- Think about who has written the website. Is it a company that may be trying to sell you something?

3- Check if the website is up-to-date. Is the information still reliable and useful? When was it updated?

4- Always consult more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.

5- What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.

6 -Websites that have named their sources are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7- Save the URL (Uniform Resource Locator) of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.

Hi!

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay, but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and blogs, and now I've got pages and pages of notes. But I'm really confused. I don't know which sites are good and which aren't – and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site that I looked at earlier. Help!!!!!



Thanks,

Nagwa

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising.

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts that you find in search results.

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Workbook page 30

Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character e.g. Tl342mS!*. It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser with the latest software update before you open a webpage.
- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips seem obvious, but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online. Stealing someone's identity is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

Workbook page 31

Don't believe everything you read!

The title of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed at which we have access to new information means that this warning is even more important now. In the past, professional journalists always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old. Today the internet provides instant news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button. This means that

journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be. Even serious newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish sociology student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world. The moral of the story is to listen to those with more
life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it frst.

Exercises on unit : 5 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Teachers show students how to ……………research online.
a. let b. sit c. do d. make
2. You should ……………spending hours reading unhelpful websites.
a. enjoy b. avoid c. acquire d. inquire
3. You should be careful enough to use …………… websites.
a. reliable b. tricky c. unknown d. untruthful
4. I must ……………my doctor; I feel chest pain.
a. insult b. consult c. insist d. result
5. I need to …………… my antivirus to be fully protected.
a. vibrate b. deactivate c. update d. date
6- The driver take another road to ---------------------- traffic jam on the main road.
a) intrude b) void c) avoid d) vacuum
7.You can …………… videos to YouTube .It is easy.
a. overload b. load c. download d. upload
8. ……………are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. LM
a. Hackers b. Downloads c. Antiviruses d. Cookies
9. Companies usually …….things you are interested in so that they can increase sales online. LM
a. recognize b. advertise c. hide d. appear
10. Surprisingly, she turned her back on me. This means that she…………… me. LM
a. helped b. paid attention to c. realized d. ignored
11.The critics …………the new film of the famous actor. It had no good plot.
a) prepared b) redetected c) criticized d) deformed
12.The………. Of the teacher is very important. He prepares good generations.
a) tusk b) task c) clerk d) deck
13- The company must reduce costs to compete ---------------------
a) effective b) efficient c) effectively d) effectiveness
14-My lack of practical -------------------- was a disadvantage . I should have been experienced
a) experiment b) experience c) experienced d)exposition
15-My friend has a wide ----------------- of painting and music.
a) knowledge b) ignorance c) negligence d)backward
16.The………of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation
17. The patient's brain is regularly……so that doctors can detect the progress disease.
a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated
18. I usually……..my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver
19- Businessmen are looking for someone who is ---------------- and hard-working.
a) reliable b) unreliable c) comfortable d) liable
20 Al Ahram newspaper………many modern stories by Egyptian writers.
a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes
21. Mohammad Salah is a………..footballer, so Liverpool club pays him to play.
a) programmer b) professional c) professor d) lifelong
22. Most insects………themselves to new environments they line in.

a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

23. Being successful is not an easy........You should work hard.

a) right b) play c) section d)task

24. It might take 2 minutes to.......these photos from the website.

a) load b) download c) upload d) overload

25-If your headache continues , you should ------------------- your doctor .

a) advise b) consult c) reconcile c) conceal

26-Despite the -------------that she was wearing a seat belt, she was thrown sharply forward.

a) factual b) real c) fact d) faction

27- When I finish writing my notes , I will ---------------- them to the internet .

a) upload b) download c) update d) upgrade

28-I want my computer system more powerful and efficient so I will ------------------ it soon ,

a) upload b) download c) out of date d) upgrade

29- This man lies a lot . I can't depend on him as he is ------------------------

a) reliable b) unreliable c) comfortable d) liable

30- My grandson is fond of ------------------ a lot of games from the internet ,

a) uploading b) downloading c) updating d) upgrading

31-Although Egypt enjoys plenty of -------------------- , it isn't an advanced country .

a) resources b) sauce c) resorts d) savings

32-His public --------------- is very different from the real person . He is proud and conceited.

a) image b) picture c) portrait d) painting.

33. Most websites use.........that enable them to show adverts.

a) pages b) posts c) cookies d) shares

34.........advertising are those advertisement which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.

a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted

35. Users have to pay to be able to.......the trial antivirus to the full version.

a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure

36. Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of..........of their fans.

a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses

37........will pay higher rates to advertise during impotant matches.

a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals

38-Unless he finds a ------------------ to pay for him, he will be forced to retire from athletics.

a) squad b) system c) sponsor d) spanish

39-The advertisements are intended to improve the company's -------------------

a) image b) picture c) portrait d) painting

40. The story that the actor told the journalists was...... He is a liar.

a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

41 The adjective ambiguous" can be the opposite to the adjective.....

a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

42 We must watch for our children who.......online a lot.

a) come b) go c) travel d) view

43.The adjective "sincere" is a synonym to the adjective.....

a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

44 The research was........by a team of scientists at Cairo University.

a) made b)done c) carried d) operated

45-In my opinion ,------------- media websites have affected our life entirely .

a) sociable b) social c) society d) psychology

46-You have got a nice --------------- on your mobile . Can you download it for me?

a) app b) applicant c) apply d) ape

47- The government will do a new --------------- to find out the number of the unemployed .

a) quiz b) survey c) questionnaire d) riddle

48-I don't grasp what you ------------- by saying these words.

a) tell b) inform c) mean d) warn

49- His ---------------- towards us was becoming more and more aggressive عدواني

a) behaviour b) behave c) profile d) picture

50. You can run this.......on a computer and a mobile if you like.

a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

51. The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely....to it.

a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

52. The.......of all famous athletes is to win a medal in the Olympics.

a) headlight b) light c) highlight d) favour
53. The old project has been......as a waste of money.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised
54. It takes a long time to....a drug for a new disease.
a) install b) reform c) develop d) treat
55. Grandmother.........her grandchildren with stories, songs and drama.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained
56.The old man said that he couldn't....his life without his wife.
a) imagine b)stop c) retire d) demand
57. Facebook has become the most important social media......all over the world
a) pavement b) platform c) site d) canal
58. It's...............to keep a copy of your Important documents.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory
59.Improving public transport can help.....the problem of pollution.
a) revolve b) acquire c) solve d) inquire
60.The university is.......number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared
61.You can.............for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse
62.The young writer's poems show that she has a lot of......
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination
63- She had a ------------ with her sister who became angry with her .
a) disagreement b) agreement c) approval d) treaty
64-There is no (roam - room – field – place) for mistakes.
65-You should (disguise – exercise - apologize – recognise) for coming late.
66- Don't (speak - spell - spill - spy) on your parents.
67- In order to reach your goals , you should have (patience – silence – spying – lying) .
68- When it rained , we found a (shelf – shelter – shore – shift) under a big tree .
69-He is funny . He always tells us funny (jokes – jocky – jugs – jets).
70- I can't open the door as my keys were (looked – lacked – locked – luck) in
71-You look very (smart – intelligent – fool – stupid) in that suit.
72- I admit it was not the (smart- smarter – smartest – most smart) thing I have ever did.
73- Scientists are doing ------------------- to reach an effective vaccine for Corona Virus
a) search b) research c) experience d) seek
74- The driver take another road to ---------------------- traffic jam on the main road.
a) intrude b) void c) avoid d) vacuum
75-Detectives are now faced with the ---------------- of identifying the body .
a) tusk b) task c) clerk d) deck
76- The antonym of the word helpful is (unhelpful – assist – assistant – cooperative)
77- The company must reduce costs to compete ---------------------
a) effective b) efficient c) effectively d) effectiveness
78- A company is the (opposite – antonym - object – synonym) of a firm
79-My lack of practical -------------------- was a disadvantage . I should have been experienced
a) experiment b) experience c) experienced d)exposition
80-I ---------------------- a moment of panic as I boarded the plane .
a) experiment b) experience c) experienced d)exposition
81-My friend has a wide ----------------- of painting and music.
a) knowledge b) ignorance c) negligence d)backward
82-We are keeping ------------------- with the latest developments .
a) out of date b) old-fashioned c) up-to date d) dated
83-The main --------------- of the conversation was Ahmed's new job.
a) top b) topic c) tour d) tone
84-Keep the text short and on (talk – subject – situation – topic)
85-My mobile software is out of date so I must -------------- it immediately .
a) date b) upload c) update c) modern
86-If your headache continues , you should ------------------ your doctor .
a) advise b) consult c) reconcile c) conceal
87-The word additional is the synonym of the word (ex- infra – extra – mono)
88- Growth has not been ----------------------across the country .
a) unicorn b) union c) unit d) uniform
89-Despite the ------------that she was wearing a seat belt, she was thrown sharply forward.

a) factual b) real c) fact d) faction
90- When i finish writing my notes , i will ---------------- them to the internet .
a) upload b) download c) update d) upgrade
91-I want my computer system more powerful and efficient so I will ------------------ it soon ,
a) upload b) download c) out of date d) upgrade
92- This man lies a lot . I can't depend on him as he is ------------------------
a) reliable b) unreliable c) comfortable d) liable
93- My grandson is fond of ------------------ a lot of games from the internet ,
a) uploading b) downloading c) updating d) upgrading
94-Although Egypt enjoys plenty of -------------------- , it isn't an advanced country .
a) resources b) sauce c) resorts d) savings
95-His public -------------- is very different from the real person .
a) image b) picture c) portrait d) painting.
96- Rescue planes are trying to ------------------ the missing sailors .
a) sink b) drown c) locate d) duplicate
97-Workmen arrived to take ---------------- the scaffolding سقالات
a) off b) down c) in d) after
98-A huge ----------------------- over the street said " welcome home "
a) motto b) slogan c) symbol d) banner
99- Live and let live ." That's my (motto – flag – banner – symbol)
100-Unless he finds a ------------------ to pay for him, he will be forced to retire from athletics.
a) squad b) system c) sponsor d) Spanish

Grammar

Seem to / be meant to / be supposed to

Seem / look / appear / sound + to + infinitive

يبدو للحديث عن كيف شخص أو شيء ما يبدو ولكن دون تأكيد نستخدم:

Seem / look / sound / appear

- He **seems** ill = I think he is ill but I am not sure .
- She **seems happy** . الفعل (seem) يأتي بعده صفة وليس ظرف

الأفعال(seem / look / sound / appear) لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة أو المبني للمجهول بمعني يبدو

- You seem / look tired today
-My mother appears / sounds to be sad.

يمكن استخدام الكلمات الاتية : (that / like /as if / as though) بعد Seem

- It seemed that he didn't like the soup .
- It seems like he is going to leave early .
- It seems as if / as though he needs help .
- It seems to me that you don't like the food .

كيفية استخدام (seem) في النفي

- Mona doesn't seem to study hard .
- Mona seems not to study hard .

في الاستمرار يمكن استخدام الصيغة الاتية(seem to be + v + ing)

- My father seems to be sleeping now .
- He seemed to be looking for something.

للتعبير عن الصيغة التامة نستخدم Seem to have+ pp

-The tax people seem to have made a mistake .

- She was content . She seemed to have got everything she needed .
نستخدم [(seem + الصفة) ولا نستخدم (seem to be / appear + الصفة)] مع الآراء الشخصية
- He seems older than he is . - She seems taller than she is in this dress
نستخدم (seems / appears to be+ الصفة) مع الحقائق الموضوعية -
- He seems (to be) ill - He appears (to be) ill

be meant to + infinitive

-mean = (indicate / symbolize) يعني / يدل على / يرمز إلى
-When I nod my head , it usually means "yes "
-This expression on his face means happiness .
-mean = (signify / represent) / يعني
-What does the word "cheerful" mean?
(لاحظ استخدام ing بعدها بمعنى يعني)
-Losing your money means becoming bankrupt .
-mean = (intend) / يقصد
- We are late . I mean we must hurry . - I didn't mean that you are lazy .
(لاحظ استخدام inf بعدها بمعنى يقصد)
-I didn't mean to hurt you . - I didn't mean to break the window .
-It was meant to be a chocolate cake but I dropped it .
-Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us

- be meant to = be supposed to من المفترض ان
-You are meant to get up early . / -You are supposed to get up early .
-He is meant to look after his sister. / -He is supposed to look after his sister .
-I don't think she is meant to be an engineer. - (be meant to = be suitable for)
- I don't think she is suitable for the job of an engineer .

-to talk about what the purpose تستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض
-The police (are meant / are supposed) to protect people .
-This air conditioner (is meant / is supposed) to make the air in the room cool .

-They are meant to arrive by now. (لا نستخدم mean في الأزمنة المستمرة)

be supposed to + infinitive = should+ infinitive

Suppose= assume / presume / believe / guess / expect
-The hospital is supposed to have the best doctors.
-To talk about obligation للحديث عن الالزام
-You are supposed to come on time. - He is supposed to be helping his father now .
-We are supposed to pay the tax at the beginning of the month .
-To talk about arrangements للحديث عن الترتيبات
-I am supposed to cook dinner on Monday evenings .
-How many clients are you supposed to meet today /?
-To talk about expectations للحديث عن التوقعات
-It was supposed to rain this morning . -This stuff is supposed to kill flies .Let's try it
-To talk about our beliefs about something للحديث عن المعتقدات
-It was supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.
-That 's a lovely picture but what is it supposed to be ?
-He is supposed to be rich , you know
- My mother was supposed to have cooked our lunch two hours ago. لاحظ الصيغة التامة
- Ali was supposed to take the medicine. = Ali should have taken the medicine.

Choose the right answers:

1. Car drivers are ……………. to wear seat belts. LM
a. meaning b. supposed c. supposing d. seemed
2. My homework ……………. to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with me. LM
a. sees b. seems c. supposes d. means
3. Did he mean ……………..her late at night? – No, it was by mistake. LM
a. to calling b. calls c. to be called d. to call
4. Schools ……………… to follow rules of safety. LM
a. must b. are seemed c. are meant d. supposed
5. They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This shows………… . LM
a. expectation b. prohibition c. impossibility d. ability
6. She…………to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job. LM
a. supposed b. seems c. is seemed d. is meant
7. Clubs …………to be places for sports and social activities. LM
a. are meant b. are supposing c. are seemed d. seems
8. He…………to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable. LM
a. not supposed b. isn't supposing c. isn't seemed d. doesn't seem
9. I'm………….to tidy my room before I start studying. LM
a. supposed b. meaning c. seemed d. have
10.. What ……………. to do in the company? I need to know all about my duties. LM
a. am I seemed b. do I mean c. am I supposed d. do I suppose
11-It ………………… that children do the same with messaging.
a. seems b. supposed c. meant d. pretending
12-I should have set the alarm clock as I was ……………… to meet my friend this morning.
a. seemed b. meant c. suppose d. pretending
13-Cookies are ……………to make it easier for us to find things that interest us
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. meant
14-My brother was ……………. to help me yesterday, but he was too busy chatting online
a. mean b. supposed c. suppose d. seemed
15-You shouldn't have entered that room as you were not ……………….. to be there.
a. seems b. supposed c. meant d. suppose
16- I was ………………….. to see my friend Nour yesterday .but I didn't have time .
a. supposed b. seems c. meaning d. pretending
17-The weather ………………… to be hot tomorrow.
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. meant
18-I am …………………… to take part in a poetry competition.
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. pretending
19 Hala…….to phone me last night, but she didn't.
a) is supposed b) seems c) is meant d) was supposed
20 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English…..to be getting better.
a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means
21 The open space…….to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market
a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant
22. I'd better hurry. I...to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.
a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed
23 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still.to do any heavy work.
a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed
24 This is the second car she has bought this year. She………to be rich .
a) supposes b) means c) seems d) supposed
25. Collecting money……to make us happy, but to some people it has become a disease.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed
26 His music seems to……by the rock culture of the seventies.
a) influence b) be influencing c) be influenced d) being influenced
27-My teacher …………….. be happy with my work
a. meant b. supposed c. seemed to d. meant to
28-Maher ………………. be a lot happier in his new school.
a. seemed to b. supposed c. meant d. seems

29-I really want to read this because it is ……………. to be the most exciting book .
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. pretending
30-They have attacked our borders .It (means – seems – supposes – is supposed) war
31- One of the team members --------------- to attend the press conference.
a) means b) is seemed c) is supposed d) is meaning
32- The mechanic is meant (to check - to be checked – check – be check)my car .
33-The new equipment (is – was – were – are) supposed to be delivered yesterday.
34. All my friends.....to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.
a) were supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed
35. If your car breaks down on the road, pull it aside. It...........to block the road.
a) is supposed b) is not supposed c) is meant d) seems
36 The Eiffel Tower....to attract people to the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed
37.The film............to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin on time.
a.seemed b.meant c.was supposed d.waned
38 There were some problems at first , but they ....to have been solved.
a)seem b) meant c) supposed d) will be supposed
39.He............. to be a doctor- but he preferred to be a squash player.
a) seeme b) supposed c) is meant d) was meant
40. I shouldn't eat too much. I....to be on a diet.
a)'m supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant
41-My teacher ……………. be happy with my work
a. meant b. supposed c. seemed to d. meant to
42-Maher ……………… be a lot happier in his new school.
a. seemed to b. supposed c. meant d. seems
43-I really want to read this because it is ……………. to be the most exciting book .
a. seems b. supposed c. meaning d. pretending
44- It ------------ this boy has lost something .
a) means b) seems that c) seems d) b&c
41-They have attacked our borders .It (means – seems – supposes – is supposed) war
42- One of the team members --------------- to attend the press conference.
a) means b) is seemed c) is supposed d) is meaning
43- The mechanic is meant (to check - to be checked – check – be check)my car .
44-The new equipment (is – was – were – are) supposed to be delivered yesterday.
45- I suppose that he is lying , Suppose here means --------------
a) assume b) know c) guess d) belief
46-The new flat (means – is meant – is seemed – is meaning) to have a view of the Nile .
47-It …………………… to snow last week.
a. supposed b. meant c. didn't suppose d. wasn't supposed
48-Maya meant ……………. you.
a. calling b. to call c. call d. calls
49-Amr seems ……………… a good day.
a. has b. have c. had d. to be having
50.The train (means – meant – is meant – meaning) to leave at 9 o'clock

Choose the best Arabic translation:

1- Education for all. All means men and women, the old and the young, the rich and the poor and the educated and the uneducated in both rural and urban communities. Everyone needs education suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements so that they may contribute to education and benefit from it throughout their lives

١. التعليم للجميع ونعنى للجمبع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والصحراويه . فكل فرد يريد تعليما يناسب عمرة بمتغيراتة ومتطلباتة حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٢. التعليم للجميع ونعنى للجمبع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليما يناسب عمرة بمسئولياته ومتطلباتة حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٣. التعليم للجميع ونعنى للجمبع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليما يناسب عمرة بمتغيراتة ومتطلباتة حتى يمكنه أن يستفيد من التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
٤ التعليم. للجميع ونعنى للجمبع أى للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون فى كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليما يناسب عمرة بمتغيراتة ومتطلباتة حتى يمكنه أن يسهم فى التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته

2-Some people think that genetically modified food may bring new diseases in the future. Others are in favour of this type of food. Tey think GM crops can improve agriculture and protect people from starvation in poor countries.

١- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة فى المستقبل والبعض الاخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمى الناس من المجاعات فى الدول الغنيه

٢-يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يتغلب علي أمراضا جديدة فى المستقبل والبعض الاخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمى الناس من المجاعات فى الدول الفقيرة

٣-يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة فى المستقبل والبعض الاخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمى الناس من المجاعات فى الدول الفقيرة

٤- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة في المستقبل والبعض الاخر يمول هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمى الناس من المجاعات فى الدول الفقيرة

3- Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans. It saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons to be used for developing education and solving our problems.

١-السلام بين الامم ليس أمرضرورى فهويعطى كل دولة الفرصة فى تنفيذخطط التنمية وتوفرالاموال المهدرةعلى الحروب وإنفاقها فى تطويرالتعليم وحل المشكلات

٢-السلام بين الامم أمرضرورى فهويعطى كل قاره الفرصة فى تنفيذخطط التنمية وتوفرالاموال المهدرةعلى الحروب وإنفاقها فى تطويرالتعليم وحل المشكلات

٣-السلام بين الامم ليس أمرضرورى فهويعطى كل دولة الفرصة فى تنفيذخطط التنمية وتوفرالاموال المهدرةعلى الحروب وعدم إنفاقها فى تطويرالتعليم وحل المشكلات

٤-السلام بين الامم أمرضرورى فهويعطى كل دولة الفرصة فى تنفيذخطط التنمية وتوفرالاموال المهدرةعلى الحروب وإنفاقها فى تطويرالتعليم وحل المشكلات

Choose the best English translation:

١_يمثل النوم حاجة بشرية للراحة وتنشيط الجسد والعقل يعتقد بعض علماء النفس انه يساهم في التطور العقلي والبدني للاطفال في بداية حياتهم.

a. **sleep is a human need to have rest and refresh the body and mind. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human metal and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.**
b. **sleep was a human need to have a rest and refresh the body and mind. Some. Psychologists thought that it supports the human metal and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.**
c. **sleep is a human need to have a job and refresh the body and mend. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.**
d. **sleep is a human need to have rest and fish the body and mind. Some. Psychologists think that it supports the human mental and physical progress for the children at the beginning of their lives.**

2 جميعنا يعلم اهمية التكنولوجيا الحديثة وانها تلعب دورا فعالا في حياتنا المعاصرة ولكن يجب ان نعلم انها كما تسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن ان تدمرها

a. **We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective rule in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.**
b. **We all know the importance of modern technology. It play an effective rules in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.**
c. **We all know the importance of modern technology. It plays an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it contributes to the progress societies, it can destroy them.**
d. **We all know the importance of modern technology. It played an effective role in our modern life, but we should know that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can destroy them.**

3ينبغى أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم

1. **We should discourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.**
2. **We should not encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.**
3. **We should encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.**
4. **We should encourage old people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.**

Test on unit five

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-When Mohammed Ali presented the giraffe to France, the French set their eyes -----------it.
a) on b) in c) at d) to
2-The use of light and dark ------------------- good and evil
a) symbolizes b) symbol c) sample d) sighns
3-I have managed to ---------------- many films yesterday from the internet .
a) upload b) load c) download d) unload
4-When you choose your friends , make sure they are -----------------------
a) smugglers b)swindlers c) impostors d) reliable
5-I can't benefit you in this case , you should --------------------- a respected lawyer
a) consult b) consultant c) advise d) advice
6-The photo which you've posted lately is not suitable , you must take it -------------
a) after b) down c) on d) in
7-My furniture has become too old . I should ------------------ most of it.
a) new b) out of date c)update d) date to
8-When the daughter escaped from the house , her mother went ---------------------
a) happy b) glad c) pleased d) mad
9- The driver pressed hard on the brake of the car to avoid ------------- over the boy
a)running b) to run c) ran d) to running
10- Each student in the scientific department aims at ---------------- a top faculty
a) joining b) join c) to join d) joins
11- My father is --------------- to be in Cairo now but he is still at home.
a) seemed b) supposed c) meant d) supposition
12- My sister ---------------- to be ill . She should go to hospital.
a) supposed b) meant c) seemed d) appearing
13-This reastaurant is (mean – meant – meaning – means) to be excellent
14- He seems (to be – be – being – to being) the last one to make mistakes.
15- My teacher was ------------------- to give me a prize yesterday but he must have forgotten
a) seemed b) supposed c) meant d) supposing
16- We should uploade appropriate مناسب subjects (to – from – in – about) the internet .

(2) Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer:

Should we work all the time without having rest or entertainment? The answer is that we can't go on working stopping. From time to time, we should stop to have some rest and some recreation to have fun. If we didn't, we could make mistakes and our work might get worse.

An overworked person may end up by losing their ability to think clearly and by having no energy to go on working. Sleep is one way by which we can renew our energy. Sports and games are also important for brainworkers, who stay in closed offices and don't have a good chance to exercise their muscles. Swimming, walking and other outdoor activities are excellent and may very good for all people, so we shouldn't waste our weekends. People make full use of them by being in the open spaces. Having forgotten all about our work and the worries of life, we can then enjoy ourselves to the full and return the next day to work with our energy fully renewed. Change has a magic effect on man's health and his work.

Only clever people are those who can make a balance between their work and their personal lives. They are hardworking when they do their jobs and they live the happiest moments when they aren't working.

1. The best title for the passage is………………… .
a. Happy Moments b. Magical Energy

c. Importance of Rest d. Importance of Games

2. The underlined word "recreation" in the first paragraph means……………. .

a. effort b. health c. stress d. relaxation

3. The writer's purpose in the last paragraph is to…………………… .

a. suggest doing our jobs in the open air b. tell us the story of hardworking people

c. warn us of living happily without work d. advise us to make a life-work balance

4. According to the second paragraph, we understand that man's health improves by……………

a. changing our sleeping habits b. thinking of the worries of life

c. having a break every now and then d. working all the time without rest

5. All the following are examples of brainworkers except……………… .

a. mathematicians b. cleaners c. surgeons d. engineers

6. According to the passage, change has…………………… .

a. a vital effect on health and work b. no effect on health or work

c. an essential effect on health only d. an important effect on work only

7. We can avoid making mistakes if we………………… .

a. don't have rest b. relax

c. go on hard work d. do our jobs lazily and carelessly

8. An overworked person has a………………meaning.

a. positive b. violent c. aggressive d. negative

A. Choose the best Arabic translation:: (3 marks)

1. The new traffic law is extremely strict. It aims at protecting the lives of innocent citizens from the recklessness of some drivers. Punishments include imprisonment and paying a lot of money.

١ ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية ارواح المواطنين الابرياء من بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع غرامات.

٢ ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية ارواح المواطنين الابرياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات الحبس ودفع الكثير من المال كغرامات

٣ ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية المواطنين الاحياء من تهوربعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع الثير من المال كغرامات.

٤ ان قانون المرور الجديد صارم للغاية وهو يهدف الي حماية المواطنين الاحياء من تهور بعض السائقين وتشمل العقوبات السجن ودفع الكثير من المال كغرامات

A. Choose the best English translation:: (3 marks)

2- يحب أن نرشد أستهلكنا من المياه وإلا سوف نواجه مشكلات خطيرة فى المستقبل القريب

1.We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.

2.We must not rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.

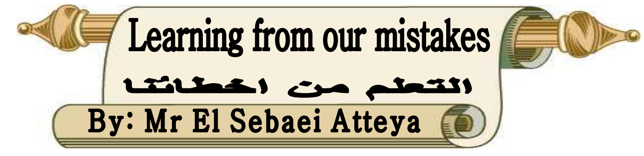
3. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the near future.

4. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

(4) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic: (6marks)

The role of Charitable Organizations in our Society





fog	ضباب	dream	حلم	massive	ضخم
foggy	كثير الضباب	care about	يهتم بـ	enormous	ضخم
mean	بخيل - يعنى	mistakes	أخطاء	poverty	الفقر
fire	نار - يفصل	treat	يتعامل	sun cream	كريم شمس
beg	يتوسل	shout out	يصيح	reply	يرد
pile	ركام	businessman	رجل أعمال	chat	يتسامر
sigh	يتنهد	business	عمل	prompt	عاجل
nephew	ابن اخ	philosopher	فيلسوف	surprised	مندهش
smile	يبتسم - ابتسامة	Hard hearted	قاسي	narrative	سرد قصصي
tone	نبرة الصوت	gift	هبة	pool	حمام
boss	رئيس	pay	يدفع - راتب	disappointed	محبط
Christmas	عيد الميلاد	mind	عقل- يمانع	interested in	مهتم بـ
carol	ترنيمة	Bring back	يذكر	regret	يندم
character	شخصية	assistant	مساعد	generous	كريم
friendship	صداقة	ignore	يتجاهل	pick up	يلتقط
butcher	جزار	Lose touch	تنقطع علاقته ب	alone	لوحده
waste	يضيع	apparently	من الواضح	attention	انتباه
invite	يدعو	character	شخصيه	close	قريب
logical	منطقى	damage	يتلف - تلف	dark	مظلم
plenty of	كثيرا من	relationship	علاقه	donation	التبرع
lightning	البرق	employee	موظف	employer	صاحب عمل
forgive	يسامح	feedback	تغذيه ارتجاعيه	fire	نار- مدفأه
hut	كوخ	leader	قائد	necklace	عقد
caption	تعليق	main	رئيسي	mall	مركز تجاري
straw	قش	memory	ذاكره	opposite	في مواجهه
rise	ينهض	organise	ينظم	own	يمتلك
torch	شعلة	pocket	جيب	reunion	لم الشمل
mice	فئران	sadly	بحزن	honest	امين
a fool	أحمق	treat	يعالج	unfriendly	عدواني
polite	مؤدب	upset	منزعج	wake	يستيقظ

Definitions

beg	To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much	يتوسل
mean	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people	بخيل
pile	A group of things put on top of each other	كومه
sigh	A deep breath out that shows you are tired , sad or disappointed	تنهيده
Bring back	To make somebody remember something or think about it	يعيد ذكري
Fall out	Stop being friendly with somebody . / to have a quarrel	يتشاجر - يقاطع
Keep in touch with	Continue to communicate with	يكون علي اتصال مع
Get into	Start enjoying	يألف - يندمج
Lose touch with	Stop communicating with	تنقطع صلته مع

Get on with	Be friendly with	يحسن التعامل مع
Hang out with	Spend time with	يألف - يرافق

1 - We were good friends until we fell out with each other
2 - I like to hang out with my friends in the park.
3- Whenever I go past my primary school, it brings back lovely memories.
4- Social media is a great way to keep in touch with friends.
5 – Don't lose touch with your good friends .
6- The photographs brought back many pleasant memories

Expressions

Bring back	يتذكر - يستعيد	On fire	محترق
Fall out	يتخاصم – يغضب من	Smile at	يبتسم لـ
Get into	يستمتع – يهتم بـ	Christmas carol	ترنيمة عيد الميلاد
Get on with	ينسجم مع	Dream of / about	يحلم بـ
Hang out with	يقضي وقت سعيد مع	Care about / for	يهتم بـ
Keep in touch with	يداوم علي الاتصال مع	Hard hearted	قاسي القلب
Lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال مع	Soft hearted	رقيق القلب
Sporting event	حدث رياضي	There is no room for	لا يوجد مجال لـ
A deep breath out	زفير عميق	Pay ......to	يدفع ل
Argue with	يتجادل مع	care about	يهتم ب
Communicate with	يتواصل مع	Pick up	يلتقط
Run off	ينطلق	Move away	يبتعد
Well-written essay	مقال مكتوب جيدا	make change	يحدث تغيير

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
beg	يتوسل	Begger-beggary	متسول - تسول		
mean	يقصد - يعني	meanness	البخل	mean	بخيل
employ	يوظف	Employer-employee	صاحب العمل - موظف		employable

Synonyms @ Antonyms

Word		Synonyms		Antonyms	
alone	وحيد	Lonely-isolated	وحيد	Loved - wanted	مرغوب فيه
disappointed	محبط	frustrated	محبط	Pleased-satisfied	سعيد
ignore	يتجاهل	disregard	يتجاهل	Pay attention	
friendship	صداقة	amity - companionship	صداقة	hate - enemyship	كراهيه - عداوه
connect	يصل - يربط	associate - link	يربط - يضم	detach – divide-disjoin	يفصل – يفرق
mean	بخيل	Cruel- unkind	قاسي	generous	كريم
logical	منطقي	reasonable	معقول	illogical	غير منطقي
positive	ايجابي			negative	سلبي

Language Notes

Think of = think about يفكر في / عند السؤال عن الرأي
•I'm thinking of / about buying a new car. •What do you think of / about this shirt?

♦Think of يتذكر / يفكر في الآخرين

•I can't think of her name now•I should think of others.

♦Profession ♦Work ♦Job ♦Career ♦لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية:

♦Professionمهنة أو عمل يتطلب قدرا كبيرا من التدريب والتعليم مثل الطب والمحاماة والتدريس

•He left the teaching profession to set up his own business.

♦ Work •العمل بصفة عامة ولا تجمع

: Peter's work involves a lot of travelling.

♦Job وظيفة (تجمع)و تشير إلي عمل منتظم يقوم به الشخص لكسب المال:

•When she left college, she got a job as a secretary.

•She has applied for a job

♦ (Career:)العمل الذي يمارسه الشخص طوال حياته الوظيفية ويمكن أن يحصل فيه علي ترقيات_♦

•He has a good career in journalism. الصحافة

♦ She has a respectable career in banking

♦ Quit) يترك / يغادر / يتوقف عن شيء

• He quit smoking a year ago• She quit school

♦Quiet هادئ = calm

• Be quiet! I've got a headache صداع.

♦Quite تماما / إلى حد ما = fairly / completely

•The boys are quite intelligent

♦Let + مفعول + مصدر

♦ He let me do the experiment by myself.

♦ Allow + مفعول + to مصدر

♦ My father allowed us to watch TV last night.

♦ each other /♦one another /كل منهما الاخر

They looked at each other and laughed.

We have learned a lot about one another

♦ I have plenty of friends / I have a lot of friends (plenty ولا تستخدم مع a lot مع a نستخدم

♦disappointment = frustration احباط / disappointed = frustrated محبط

تعريفات القصة

apologize	Say that you are sorry for doing something wrong or causing a problem
double	To make something become twice as much or as many
patience	The ability to stay calm and accept a delay or something annoying
go mad	Become mad
room	Empty space that can be used for a particular purpose
shelter	Having a place to live or stay
joke	To say something to make people laugh
spies	A person who tries to get secret information about another country
disagreement	A situation where people have different opinions about something

A Christmas Carol

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big

fire to keep them warm. There was only a small fire and it was very far away. "It's late. Can I go home, Mr Scrooge?" Bob begged. Have you finished your work?' asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and sighed.

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob . No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, 'Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about"؟

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad? replied Fred. 'Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too".

"Have you come to ask me for money? asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone. 'No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner'.

"Bahr said his uncle.

A Christmas Carol: After a dream

The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream, but now he could see his mistakes. If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. 'You! Boy!' he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

Yes, Mr. Scrooge,' shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr. Scrooge smile. "I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you?'

Of course.' said the boy and then he ran off before Mr. Scrooge changed his mind. Scrooge went out in the street and said. "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr. Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr. Scrooge.- and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside,

Workbook page 39

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, in the middle of a conversation, when you're talking, they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a

conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships. However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel. So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket and your eyes on your friendship.

Grammar LISTENING

Exercises on unit : 6 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.Choose the right answers:

1.I felt a little ....when my team lost the match.
a. appointed b. disappointed c. imparted d. acquainted

2.Ten people............three children were injured in the bus accident.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

3. We should teach our children to learn from their........................
a) rights b) corrections c) mistakes d) behaviours

4.I took my friend's place in the........until he returned from the holiday.
a) office b) home c) building d) plane

5. There is a running...........taking place these days. Are you in?
a) match b) path c) race d) passage

6-I can't see in front of me . There is thick (fog – foggy – smug – sunny) in the air today.

7- He wants to see them (big – bag – beg – pig) for mercy الرحمة

8-Although my uncle is a wealthy man , he is too (generous – mean – meaning – delighted)

9-Don't (pile – pal – bale – ball) your work .Do it immediately .

10- The boy of my brother or sister is my (niece – grandson – nephew – neighbour)

11- Sama (sighed – signed – signaled – said) with relief that it was all over.

12-Always meet your friends with a big (smell – small – smile – sneeze) on your face.

13-Don't speak to me in that (tune – ton – tone – tuna) of voice again.

14- When my (boss – bass – pass – base) appreciate my work , I feel happy and content.

15. My son wants me to.................him like a child.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting

16. I'm going to the park outside the city for a.......of fresh air.
a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality

17- ------------------- is a precious treasure as your friends always help you in time of crises.
a) Hardship b) Friendship c) Leadership d) Students

18-The main actor of the play performed his ---------------- so well that i believed him.
a) rule b) film c) character d) chart

19. It was ....of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
a) cowardly b) miserly c) hasty d) generous

20.The Davis Cup is an important....tennis championship in which all the countries take part
a) local b) national c) folk d) international

21. Nehad ....not phoning her close friend on her birthday. She should have done .
a) regrets b .affects c) pleases d) rejoices

22. The adverb "mysteriously" is an antonym the adverb.............
a) apparently b) improperly c) improbably d) scientifically

23. Mother usually...........with our aunt for hours on the phone every day.
a) fights b) chats c) quarrels d) reverses

24- I hope your (dreams – nightmare – crises – disasters) will come true soon.

25- The government should care (on – of – out – about) people with special needs.

26- Everyone should think (of – in – about – for) his neighbours and friends' feelings
27-Do you think King Lear learnt from his previous(daughters – sons – mistakes – right)
28- Doctors should (treat – treatment – deal – tear) their patients kindly .
29-Cruel is the synonym of hard (liver – lung – stomach – hearted)
30- Hard – hearted is the antonym of (soft – harch –tough – bad) hearted.
31-The children.........their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
a)ordered b– begged c– attacked d– let
32-The police.........two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
a-breathed b– designed c– warmed d – fired)
33-The employee was busy behind a......of paper on his desk.
a-file b– Nile c– pile d– mile
34-The businessman..........deeply at the thought of losing his money.
a-cheered b– sighed d– laughed d– yelled)
35- I usually buy my clothes at the..........near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) mall d) restaurant
36. I need new computer parts which will make its............more powerful.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory
37. I advised my son to..........his study well to get high marks in exams.
a) organize b) recognise c) realise d) specialise
38.The adjective "intimate" is similar in meaning to the word"........"
a) hated b) far c) distant d) close
39.When the phone rang, my little brother..........it up immediately.
a) held b) raised c) moved d) picked
40.The new cancer hospital in 6- October City accepts............from all people.
a)sales b) donations c) products d) crops
41. When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day...........out with my friends.
a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving
42. Mother could persuade our father to change his.............about where to spend the holiday.
a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter
43.Sales of the products at present low prices would be a........of the company's investment.
a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit
44. The poor lady...........the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately
a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled
45.The young boy............with relief when he saw that he passed the test.
a) sighed b) cried c) fought d) pleaded
46. The client said that he didn't want to pay----the cold meal that the waiter brought
a) to b) about c) in d)for
47. The noun "opponent" is an antonym to the noun..........
a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d)accuser
48. Mr Sameh has dreamed of a/an.............to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation
49. The verb "ruin" can be the opposite of the verb".....*
a) destroy b) organise c) damage d) distract
50. The coach continued to argue .... the referee throughout the game
a) over b) for c) at d) with
51. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word".......".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt
52. A good teacher should never make his students feel.........
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignorant d) ignored
53. The price of the trip costs 10000 pounds...........travel and accommodation.
a) consisting b) enclosing c) containing d) including
54- We can see --------------- in the sky during heavy rain .
a) lighting b) thunder c) lightning d) lightening
55- A / An -------------- is a person who studies the meaning of life .
a) king b) prince c) fool d) philosopher
56-some poor people don't have a house or a flat .They live in ------------------
a) huts b) palaces c) villas d) apartments
57- When you -------------- someone , it means yu are no longer angry with him.

a) fall out with b) rise c) fight d) forgive
58-This man is ------------- -hearted . He is so cruel .
a) soft b) hard c) kind d) good
59-We need some dry (stay – straw – hut – furniture) for animals to sleep on .
60-I always like to watch the sun when it ------------ in the morning .
a) sets b) rises c) raises d) arises
61- -------------- are always afraid of cats .
a)_Mice b) A mouse c) dogs d) Wolves
62- In the past , people used --------------- to be lit with fires .
a) torches b) lightning c) batteries d) lightening
63- - My uncle travels a lot to do business . He is a successful --------------------
a) businesswoman b) business c) businessman d) beggar
64-Don't (beg – leg – dig – ring) him a lot . He won't help you .
65- My uncle was too mean but know he becomes so -------------------
a) miser b) generous c) miserly d) man
66-He gave me his pen as a (gift – crown – talent – gifted) and I thanked him.
67-The ministry of archaeology tries hard to ------------- back our smuggled monuments .
a) make b) take c) bring d) give
68-My friend insists on (paying – getting – taking – giving) for the bill in the restaurant .
69-He works as an (assist – assistant – nurse – philosopher) in our shop.
70-I made a suggestion but they chose to (ignore – snore – store – reset) it .
71-The word ignore is the synonym of (regard - respect – disregard – consider)
72-The government does a lot of (massive – small – tiny – minute) projects.
73-Some people live in an abject (poor – poverty – rich – wealthy)
74-After going to the beach I applied sun (cream – milk – umbrella – glasses) on my skin
75-I sent him an e-mail the other day but he didn't ---------------- to it
a) said b) say c) reply d) imply
76-The passengers on the train spend heir time ---------------- to each oher .
a) chatting b) shit c) sharing d) shouting
77- She was so -------------------- when he gifted her an expensive ring.
a) surprising b) surprise c) amazing d) surprised
78- ------------------- action was required as the fire spread.
a) Immediately b) Promptly c)Prompt d)Trumpet
79- When his son failed his exam . the father was too ----------------------
a) disappointed b) happy c) glad d) delighted
80- Some writers prefer the -------------- technique when they write a novel
a) narrative b) relative c) comparative d) superlative
81- I am keen to ------------------ in touch with my online friends .
a) keep b) make c) do bring.
82- Are you going to(lose – miss – waste – loss) touch with thise bad people?
83- They (fell – sell – tell – put) out with each other after their quarrel .
84- My brother is sociable . He gets (in – on – at – about) with people quickly
85- We can see --------------- in the sky during heavy rain .
a) lighting b) thunder c) lightning d) lightening
86- A / An -------------- is a person who studies the meaning of life .
a) king b) prince c) fool d) philosopher
87-some poor people don't have a house or a flat .They live in ------------------
a) huts b) palaces c) villas d) apartments
88- When you -------------- someone , it means yu are no longer angry with him.
a) fall out with b) rise c) fight d) forgive
89-This mas is ------------- -hearted . He is so cruel .
a) soft b) hard c) kind d) good
90-We need some dry (stay – straw – hut – furniture) for animals to sleep on .
91-I always like to watch the sun when it ------------ in the morning .
a) sets b) rises c) raises d) arises
92- -------------- are always afraid of cats .
a)_Mice b) A mouse c) dogs d) Wolves
93- In the past , people used --------------- to be lit with fires .
a) torches b) lightning c) batteries d) lightening

Grammar



If

Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

♣If ⇨ مضارع بسيط ⇨ مضارع بسيط (حقائق علمية)

► If a volcano erupts, it sends dust into the atmosphere.	
► If water freezes , it turns into ice.	► If you put a stone in water , it sinks.
► If you put ice in the sun , it melts	► If you mix red and green , you get brown

♦ تعبر هذه الحالة عن حقيقة أو مواقف معتادة ولاحظ أننا في هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم when بدلا من IF:

► If I have time, I usually walk to school.	► If you read too much , you have a headache
When I have time , I usually walk to school	► I stay home if / when I feel ill
► If the bark of young trees is badly damaged, they die.	

Unit 15 | First conditional الحالة الأولى | Mr; Hesham

1 - If / unless ⇨ مضارع بسيط ⇨ (will + مصدر / (أو فعل امر) أو should + مصدر

► If they arrive early, they will catch the metro. (احتمال)

► If he plays well, he will win.(توقع / إمكانية) ► Unless he plays well , he will lose .

► If you are ill , you should go to hospital (should / ought to / had better – must – have to)

► If you can't dictate your conditions, you should negotiate تتفاوض .

► If you see Ahmed, give him my regards. ► If you see a thief, call the police

(من الممكن ان (should) تحل محل If في الحالة الأولى)

► should my mother help me with my homework , I will finish it early .

► Should he concentrate , he will understand ► if he concentrates , he will understand

♣ If = as long as = in case = provided (that) = providing = only if + جملة كاملة

► If she comes , they will welcome her. ► As long as she comes , they will welcome her.

♣ (in case) أحياناً تدل على حدوث جواب الشرط قبل فعل الشرط

► I will take some traveller's cheque with me in case I run out of cash .

► I will take the umbrella in case it rains . (I will take it before it rains)

► I will take the umbrella with me if it rains . (I won't take it till it rains first)

► in case of = in the event of = by = with + ing (اسم)

► In the event of making noise , I will dismiss يطرد you .

► In case of rain ,we will cancel the match . ► In case of her coming, I will welcome her

♣ لا حظ الكلمات الآتية ومعناها والا : (else / or / otherwise)

► You must take your umbrella , or (otherwise) you will get wet.

► If you don't take your umbrella, you will get wet

► You should study hard or(else) you will fail

► If you don't study hard , you will fail

♣Without / But for + noun اسم = If it + isn't + for + noun

► Without (but for) your help , I will die.

► If it isn't for your help , I will die

unless = if not

► If he doesn't hurry , he won't catch the train

.► Unless he hurries , he won't catch the train

► He won't attend the party unless you invite him .

► Unless she does her work properly , she will be dismissed .

second conditional الحالة الثانية

1 - If ⇨ ماضي بسيط ⇨ (would + مصدر)

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير حقيقي في الحاضر وكذلك إعطاء النصائح :

•If he came late, I would punish him.	•If I were you, I would study well.
•He plays well so he wins the race.	•If he didn't play well, he wouldn't win the race.
• If he didn't live near me, we wouldn't see each other.	

♣ يمكن أن تعبر الحالة الثانية أحيانا عن شيء مستحيل أو شيء مناقض للواقع

• If I were a bird, I'd fly.	• If I were in your shoes . I would go to the doctor
• If I were younger, I'd go mountaineering.	•If he were a doctor, he would help us.

لاحظ الجمل الآتية

► If I had written homework , I would do it at once .

► If he were paralysed , he would have to use a wheelchair .

♣ – يمكن استخدام (were / Had ? Should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية :

لاحظ ان (had) في الحالة الثانية يأتي بعدها اسم مملوك

♣ Had I new suit . I would go to the party .

♣ Had I a complicated problem , I would consult my teacher .

لاحظ استخدام المصدر مع (should)

♣ Should it be fine , I would go out	♣ If it were fine , I would go out .

♣ Should my father have a car , he would collect me from school every day .

لاحظ استخدام (were) مع الصفة او الاسم او التصريف الثالث في المبني للمجهول في الجمل الآتية

♣ Were I rich , I would help them. // were they rewarded , they would better job next time

♣ Were I a doctor , I would help you .//

♣ – لاحظ استخدام (to) قبل الفعل الأساسي عندما نستخدم (Were) بدلاً من (If :

. ♣ Were he to study hard, he would pass the exam.

♣ Were he to study hard , he would get full marks.

Third conditional الحالة الثالثة

3 – Third conditional: If ⇨ ماضي تام ⇨ would have + p . p

♣ تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن استحالة حدوث الشيء في الماضي وكذلك الندم :

♣If they had taken a taxi, they wouldn't have been late.

♣ If he had seen me, he would have said hello. (He didn't see me. He didn't say hello.)

♣ If you had studied harder , you would have got full marks .

♣ – يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثالثة كالآتي :
♣ Had it rained so heavily , we would have floods.
♣Had he followed the instructions, the machine wouldn't have stopped.
Without / but for + اسم = if it hadn't been for + ing (اسم)
● But for (without) his help, I would have failed .
▶ If it hadn't been for your help , I would have failed .
▶ Unless it had been for your help , I would have failed

$$$

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer :

1- If you watch too much television, you……………….. your eyes.
a will damage b would damage c won't damage d would have damaged

2- If you…………… red and green paint, you get brown paint.
a mixed b will mix c had mixed d mix

3- If Ahmed had read that book, he………… what happened at the end.
a knew b will know c would know d would have known

4- If I went to London, I…………. my English every day!
a practise b will prastice c would practise d would have practised

5-I will go to the park if you…………. with me.
a come b come c came d will come

7- If I went to Australia, I…………. my cousins.
a will see b saw c would see d had seen

8- Adel……………. that phone if it hadn't been so expensive.
a might buy b might have bought c will have bought d had bought

9- I would have that mobile if I ……………. enough money.
a had had b had c have had d would have

10- What…………… If you got lost in a big city?
a you would do b did you do c would you do d you did

11- What if your passport ……………….. ? – Surely, I'd inform the police.
a had stolen b had been stolen c stole d was stolen

12- Iron ……….. if you leave it in the open air.
a rust b will rust c rusts d would rust

13 Contact the ambulance if there……….an accident.
a was b is c were d will be

14- If my friend …………supportive, I wouldn't have been able to solve the problem.
a hadn't done b had done c had been d hadn't been

15- What ………. happened if my father had refused to help me?
a have b might have c had d might have been

16- I will go to Alex if so, I ……….you.
a contact b will be contacted c will contact d would contact

17- ………………. help me if I were in trouble?
a Will you b Would you c Did you d Can you

18- If you ………………more careful, you would have minimized your mistakes.
a had been b were c had d had had

19- I ……… go to the club, if I have time. I haven't decided yet.
a would b may c should d have to

20- If she read the news, she ……………. shocked to read about the terrible accident.
a is b will be c would be d were

21- If the problem ………. well, we would have reached a reasonable solution.
a discussed b was discussed c had discussed d had been discussed

22-If you go out , ……………..the porter to bring me the keys.
a-will tell b-would tell c-tell d-won't tell

23-If it is cold this month , our plants ……………….

a-die b-will die c-would die d-had died

24-If balloon is filled with air, it..........................

a-may rise b-would rise c-rises d-will rise

25-If those goats eat the roots of my trees, the trees ....

a-die b- would die c- have died d- will die

26- If water freezes, it..............into ice.

a-will turn b-would turn c- turns d-turned

27-If it went on raining for much longer, the river ....

a-will flood b-would flood c-would have flooded d-floods

28- If the farmer's fields get very dry this summer, he..............them.

a- irrigates b- will irrigate c- would irrigate d- would have irrigate

29-if you heat ice, it........................

a-would melt b-melted c-melts d-will melt

30-If there is a sandstorm tonight, the town .... full of sand tomorrow.

a-is b-would be c-will be d-would have been

31-If you mix yellow and blue, you.............green.

a-would get b-got c-will get d-get

32-If you heat water, it ....

a-will boil b-would boil c- boils d-boiled

33-If I read in bed, I .... asleep. It's a habit.

a-could fall b-fall c-falling d-would fail

34-Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he.............to school.

a-will come b-would come c-comes d-come

35-If I were rich, I .... a palace!

a- built b-would build c-will built d- would have built

36-If Egypt had a lot of rain, it .... a lot more trees.

a-might have b-will have c-had had d-may have

37-If you had gone to the sports club, you .... Ali.

a-could see b-will see c-saw d-would have seen

38-If scientists study the rings of trees, they .... information about our climate in the past.

a-would find b-would have found c-can find d-found

39-If you pick those apples now, they .... very sweet.

a-won't taste b-doesn't taste c-wouldn't taste d-didn't taste

40-Water .... if the temperature is zero or below.

a-would freeze b-freezes c-can freeze d-will freeze

41-I ....a headache if I spend too long on the computer.

a-could get b-will get c-get d-would get

42-If she trains hard, she .... next week's race.

a-wins b-would win c-will win d-win

43-If you practise a sport, you..............better at it.

a-could get b-will get c-get d-would get

44-If you practise a sport, you..............in the sports team.

a- get b-will get c-would have got d-would get

45-If you read quickly, you .... quickly too.

a-learn b-learned c-would learn d-might learn

46-If he read quickly, he ....the book tomorrow.

a-would finish b-will finish c-finish d-would have finished

47- If you can't dictate your conditions, you............ negotiate.

a- will b- should c- need d- ought

48-if we plant trees, then we..................cleaner air.

a-will be having b-have c-will have d-will have had

49- If our heart stops working, death soon ....

a. follow b. will follow c. follows d. followed

50-if I had written work, I ....it

a-would do b-will do c-would have done d-did

51-If the money he had ....enough , he would have bought the car.

a-had b-been c-had been d-were

52-Nabila always............ her mother if she has too much to do.

a-will help b- won't help c- would help d-helps
53- If omar.............all his money, he would have to borrow.
a-spends b- spent c- had spent d-was spending
54-Had it rained so heavily, we .... floods.
a-would have b-wouldn't have had c-would have had d-will have
55- .... he arrived early yesterday, he could have attended the conference.
a) Hadn't b) Had c) Unless d) If
56- ....coming late, you will be punished.
a- unless b- in case of c- if d- without
57. ....he enough money, he would buy anew car.
a. Had b. Were c. If d. Unless
.58-...............she to work hard, he would succeed.
a. Had b. Were c. If d. Unless
59-Without his help, I ------------- that job. I'm really very thankful to him.
a. won't take b. wouldn't take c. wouldn't have taken d. didn't take
60-......................you have any problem, give me a ring immediately.
a- Were b- Should c- Unless d- Had
61-...................... his intelligence, he wouldn't pass all these tests.
a. If it isn't for b. If it weren't for c. Unless there is d. In case of

Choose the best Arabic translation

1-Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems by increasing the cultivated land and constructing new industrial projects. New cities could grow up in these areas and lead to our economic development.

١.تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغا يمكننا نقص دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الراضى وتشييد المشاريع القتصادية فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الي المو الاقتصادي

٢.تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى و عدم تشييد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الى النمو القتصادي

٣- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى و تشييد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة لا يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الى النمو القتصادي

٤- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغا يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى و تشييد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو فى تلك المناطق وستؤدى الى النمو القتصادي

2-Thanks to modern inventions, life has become easy. One can go from one place to another in a car, by train or by plane. Modern means of transport have made it possible to enjoy travel.

١.لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الختراعات الحديثه لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطاراو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

٢.لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الختراعات الحديثه لان المرء لا يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطاراو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

٣.لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الختراعات الحديثه لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطاراو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

٤.لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الختراعات الحديثه لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطاراو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل القديمة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

3- A telephone is a mixed-blessing. Sometimes you get the wrong number and so you get angry. Some impolite people may disturb you while you are eating or even sleeping. Long ago people used pigeons to send messages. They were lucky.

١.إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة فى ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطىء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس فى سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٢ .إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة فى ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الصحيح وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس فى سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٣. .إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة فى ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطىء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض المحترمين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس فى سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

٤. .إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة فى ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطىء وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد أعتاد الناس فى سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الانترت لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

Choose the correct English translation:

1 لا يمكن أن نتجاهل دور المرأة على مدى الجيال فى تحقيق تقدم المجتمع.

1.We can ignore the role of women along generations in achieving society progress.
2.We can't ignore the rule of women along generations in achieving society progress.

3.We can't ignore the role of women along generations in achieving society progress.
4. We can't ignore the role of woman along generations in achieving society progress.

2يعتبر ارتفاع السعار مشكلة معقدة ويمكن حلها فى زيادة النتاج والصادرات.

1.The rises in prices is a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
2.The rise in prices are a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
3.The rise in prices is a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
4.The rise in prices is a complex problem and can not be solved by increasing production and exports.

3نستطيع أن نتعلم الكثير من خلل السفر للدول الجنبية مثل عادات وتقاليد وأسلوب حياتهم.

1.We can not learn a lot by traveling to foreign countries: such as their customs, traditions and way of life.
2.We can learn a lot by traveling to foreign countries: such as their customs, traditions and way of life.
3.We can learn a lot by traveling to foreign countries: such for their customs, traditions and way of life.
4.We can learn a lot by traveling to foreign countries: such as their customs, traditions and ways of life.

Test on Unit 6

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If the tree fell down, it …………………………… the road.
a- will block b- may block c- would block d- would have blocked
2- If there ……………………… an accident, there would be a traffic jam.
a- is b- was c- had been d- has been
3- If there had been a traffic jam, everyone ……………………… late for work.
a- will be b- would be c- was d- would have been
4- Without the rescuers' efforts, many people………………………… .
a- died b- are dying c- have died d- would have died
5- If I ………………………. time, I usually walk to work.
a- have b- had c- had had d- have had
6- If I (am – had – had been – were) you, I'd help them.
a- am b- had been c- were d- am being
7- ………………… he applied for the job, he would have got it.
a- Had b- If c- Were d- Without
8- If you don't want to get lost, ……………………. a map with you.
a- would take b- take c- will take d- would have taken
9- My father always keeps in (touch – match – meet – seeing) with his old friends.
10- Don't ----------------------------- doing good deeds even if people don't deserve them
a) regret b) eneglect c) forget d)lose
11- If you (make – do – give – take) this mistake again , i will dismiss you .
12- The child stands on a (pale – tile – bell – pile) of books to reach the shelf
13- Doctors and nurses belong to the medical (job – profession – professional – career).
14- Do you think King Lear should ask for Cordelia's (forgiveness – polite – kind – modest)
15- Fall out means to stop being (enemy – foe – friendly – talkative) with someone.
16-The sales (assistance – assistant – firefighter - pilot) *should be friendly*

Read the following passage then answer the questions; (8 marks)

Noha doesn't like to ask people for help, but it is hard for her to perform daily activities on her own. She is almost 13, yet she is no larger than a five-year-old girl. Noha has trouble keeping her balance and can't walk very far. When she uses a wheelchair, she can't push it herself. Fortunately, Noha has a wonderful service dog named "Kemo" .

A service dog is a dog that has been trained to assist someone who has a physical problem. Kemo lets Noha lean on him when she walks. He also pulls her wheelchair and turns lights on and off. When Noha drops something, Kemo picks it up. He even pulls her socks off at night.

Kemo also helps Noha with everyday tasks at school. He carries her books from class to class in a special backpack. He puts Noha's completed assignments in her teachers' homework trays. In the lunchroom he throws away her trash. Besides making Noha less dependent on



other people, he helps her lead a happy life. Noha's classmates flock around Kemo like geese around food. This has helped her make friends.

Kemo also helps Noha be more active. With his aid, she raised over $500 in a walk-a-thon for her local humane society. Because of Kemo, Noha doesn't have to ask people for help. Kemo brings her closer to other kids. And he even helps her contribute to her community.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21-Which of the following would be the best title for this passage?
a - How Noha 's Service Dog helps her. b - Why Noha loses her balance.
c - Kemo helps Noha at school. d - Raising Money for the humane society
2-According to the passage, Kemo helps Noha by…………………… .
a - helping her to walk b - performing everyday tasks for he
c - bringing her closer to her classmates d - all of the above
23 -In the first paragraph, the author implies that Noha is at ……. Stage .
a - primary b - preparatory c- secondary d - university
4 - Noha 's body isn't ……………………for her age.
a- too small b - too little c – suitable d - too tiny
5 -The underlined word ' flock ' means ……………………
a- gather b - separate c- together d- walk round
26-The moral of the story is ……………………………
a- Noha's suffering b - Dogs are true friends
c - life without a true friend d - Noha and her friends
27 –Kemo shares Noha in benevolent work by ………………
a - assisting her to become active b - making her classmates flock around him
c - throwing away her trash d - helping her to collect donations
28 - Geese are a sort of …………………………
a - dogs b - animals c - birds d – bees

Choose the best translation

للمدرسة تأثير كبير على الطفل حيث أنها تمده بالخبرات اللزمة التى تساعده فى حل مشاكله

1.School has a significant impact on the child as it provides him with the necessary experiences which help him solve his problems.
2.School have a significant impact on the child as it provides him with the necessary experiences which help him solve his problems.
3.Schools has a significant impact on the child as it provides him with the necessary experiences which help him solve his problems.
4.School has a significant impact on the child as it provides him with the necessary experiments which help him solve his problems.

Choose the best translation

2-As people will get used to everything being digital, e-book will be more common with book mania. But, there will always be some people who like books to hold and feel. Despite the recent technology, the traditional book will remain the best friend.

١-لان الناس سيعتادون على أن يكون كل شىء حولهم رقميا وستصبح الكتب اللكترونية اقل شيوعا مع قله قراءةالكتب ولكن سيظل هناك بعض الناس الذين يحبون حمل ولمس الكتب الورقية وعلى الرغم من التكنولوجيا الحديثة؛ ستظل الكتب التقليدية أفضل صديق.
٢- لان الناس سيعتادون على أن يكون كل شىء حولهم رقميا وستصبح الكتب اللكترونية اكثر شيوعا مع الولع بقراءةالكتب ولكن سيظل هناك - بعض الناس الذين يحبون حمل ولمس الكتب الورقية وعلى الرغم من التكنولوجيا الحديثة؛ ستظل الكتب التقليدية أفضل صديق.
٣- لان الناس سيعتادون على أن يكون كل شىء حولهم رقميا وستصبح الكتب اللكترونية اكثر شيوعا مع الولع بقراءةالكتب ولكن سيظل هناك بعض الناس الذين يحبون حمل وقراءه الكتب الورقية وعلى الرغم من التكنولوجيا المدنيه؛ ستظل الكتب التقليدية أفضل صديق.
٤- لان الناس اعتادوا على أن يكون كل شىء حولهم رقميا وستصبح الكتب الكهرباثيه اكثر شيوعا مع الولع بقراءةالكتب ولكن سيظل هناك بعض الناس الذين يحبون حمل ولمس الكتب الورقية وعلى الرغم من التكنولوجيا الحديثة؛ ستظل الكتب الحديثه أفضل صديق.

31 – Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic : (6 marks)

" Your favourite sport "

Revision 2 units 4 , 5 & 6

New technology often changes the way we do things. In the past, people could only tell stories by talking to each other, but this changed when stories could be written down and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books and listen to audio books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap the bottom of your screen to show the next message. Reading a chat story feels like you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like and the expressions on their face. And some chat stories let you make choices about what happens next. But some storytellers want us to go further. They invite us to imagine how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring when we forget to include human feelings.

Digital footprints

Scientists have discovered human footprints in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic athletes. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time. The phrase 'digital footprint' describes all the information that we leave behind when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media profiles, posts and the photos we upload, as well as the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared. Our search history is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain online for years, and the comments that we make on videos can be seen by anyone. Taha El-Sayed is an expert in internet security. He advises people to do an internet search for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're supposed to remove anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged to close any social media accounts that we don't use anymore. He says that we have to be careful with our behaviour and try to be positive online. When asked about advice for young people, he said, "Think about how other people could react to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private in social media." He also warned young people not to share addresses, phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."



Workbook Exercise

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 .... I have a look at what you're posting online?
A Will B Can C Would D Can't
2 Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent ....
A frown B emoji C tone D laugh
3 I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
A can't have B could have C shouldn't have D will have
4 Did you know that 'C U l8er' is the .... for 'see you later'?
A acronym B selfie C emoji D abbreviation
5 My mother always has a bad reaction if she .... honey.
A eats B will have C have D had
6 We had a small .... about which birthday present to buy our friend.
A banner B disagreement C blog post D disbelief
7 I wish I .... taken that selfie. I look terrible!
A have not B has not C won't have D had not
8 The teacher .... us not to look at our phones during the exam.
A looked B suggested C warned D recommended
9 I shouldn't have read the email so quickly because I .... the message.
A misunderstands B misunderstanding C misunderstand D misunderstood
10 When we are not sure about how to spell a word, we can .... a dictionary.
A consult B scan C update D skim
11 If you post that picture of Amir, he .... angry for sure.
A would have got B would get C got D will get
12 There are 6,000 .... to my brother's blog.
A posters B subscribers C likes D followers
13 My dad wanted that new car the moment he set eyes .... it.
A on B in C with D back
14 I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ....?
A meaning to be B seemed to be C supposed to D meant to be
15 I like to hang .... with my friends in the park after school.
A on B with C out D in
16 I saw that someone is offering a/an .... for finding a lost mobile phone.
A profit B assistant C prize D reward